New Zealand Building Code Handbook
Third Edition

Prepared by the Department of Building and Housing
Document Status

The most recent version of this document, as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing. It is effective from 25 May 2007 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Department of Building and Housing may amend any part of any document at any time. Up-to-date versions of documents are available from www.dbh.govt.nz
Preface

1.0  INTRODUCTION

1.1 This preface provides an introduction to building controls in New Zealand. This section shows the relationship between the New Zealand Building Code (the Building Code) and various other Provisions that ensure buildings in New Zealand are safe and healthy to use.

1.2 The preface provides a convenient user reference. However, legal interpretation must be based on the actual wording of the Building Act 2004 (the Building Act), and amendments and respective Building Regulations.

2.0  BUILDING CONTROL FRAMEWORK

The regulation and performance of buildings sits under the following three-part framework.

- The Building Act, which contains the provisions for regulating building work.
- The various Building Regulations, which contain prescribed forms, list specified systems, define ‘change the use’ and ‘moderate earthquake’, and set out the rate of levy and fees for determinations.
- The Building Code, contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992, which sets performance standards all new building work must meet, and covers aspects such as stability, fire safety, access, moisture, safety of users, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The pyramid below illustrates the legislation that forms the building control framework governed by the Building Act.
2.1 The Building Act 2004

The Building Act provides the mandatory framework for the building control system to be followed when undertaking building work in New Zealand. It applies to all:

- buildings including Crown buildings, except those which may be exempt for reasons of national security
- components in a building, including plumbing, electrical and mechanical installations.

The Building Act should be read taking into account the changes under the Building Amendment Act 2005 and any subsequent amendments (copies are on www.legislation.govt.nz).

2.1.1 Purpose

The Building Act aims to improve control of and encourage better practices in building design and construction to provide greater assurance to consumers.

This means:

- more clarity on the standards we expect buildings to meet
- more guidance on how these standards can be met
- more certainty that capable people are undertaking building design, construction and inspection
- more scrutiny in the building consent and inspection process
- better protection for homeowners through the introduction of mandatory warranties.

The purpose of the Building Act is:

- to provide for regulation of building work
- to ensure that people can use buildings safely without endangering their health
- to ensure people can escape a building in case of fire
- to ensure buildings have attributes that contribute appropriately to the health, physical independence and wellbeing of the people who use them
- to ensure buildings are designed, constructed and able to be used in ways that promote sustainable development.

2.1.2 Principles

The Building Act does not contain an equivalent to section 47 of the Building Act 1991 (the former Act), which contained guidance on how a territorial authority should exercise its powers.

Under section 4 of the Building Act (section 6 under the former Act), principles to be applied in performing functions or duties, or exercising powers under the Building Act, now have greater importance. Section 4 should be taken into account when performing functions, duties or exercising powers relating to the granting of waivers or modifications of the Building Code, and the adoption and review of policies on dangerous, earthquake-prone or insanitary buildings.

The Building Act re-states many of the principles outlined in the former Act, and makes explicit some of the implied principles of that legislation (for example, that innovation is important). However, some significant new concepts have been introduced, including a particular focus on the household unit, as well as considering the whole-of-life costs of building work.

The following is a summary of the Building Act principles.

- Household units have an important role in the lives of the people who use them, and are accorded a special focus.
- The Building Code as it relates to household units is important, and household units need to comply with the Building Code.
- Maintenance requirements of household units need to be reasonable, and owners of household units need to be aware of the maintenance requirements of their household units.
- Harmful effects on human health resulting from the use of building methods, products, design or building work need to be prevented or minimised.
Preface

- Buildings need to be durable.
- Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
- The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
- Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
- Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
- People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
- The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
- Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
- People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
- Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
- Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
- The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
- Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
- Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
- Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.

2.1.3 Application

The Building Act applies to:
- building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
- maintenance of a building’s specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.

The Building Act does not cover:
- planning and resource management
- occupational safety and health.

2.1.4 Structure

The Building Act has five parts.

Part 1: Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.

Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2): Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.

Part 3: Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.

Part 4 (and Schedule 3): Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.

Part 5 (and Schedule 4): Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.
2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. Building Regulations 1992, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).

2. Building (Forms) Regulations 2004, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.


- Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
- Change the use – to determine when a change in a building’s use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
- Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.

4. Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005

5. Building Levy Order 2005


7. Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007

Note: these regulations can be found at www.legislation.govt.nz

2.3 The New Zealand Building Code


2.3.1 Content

The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

The Building Code is currently under review. Any changes to the current Building Code, and its supporting Compliance Documents, will take place from 2008 onwards. This Building Code Handbook will be updated once the review is complete.
2.3.2 Structure
The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 35 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.
1. **Objective** Social objectives the building must achieve.
2. **Functional requirement** Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.
3. **Performance** The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.

### 3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS
Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

![Diagram of compliance paths](image-url)
With the exception of alternative solutions, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

### 3.1 Compliance Documents

Compliance Documents provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Department. (Note: Compliance Documents were previously known as Approved Documents, and were published by the former Building Industry Authority.)

A design that complies with Compliance Documents must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is one Compliance Document for each of the 35 technical clauses in the Building Code. Each Compliance Document contains at least a Verification Method or an Acceptable Solution, and usually has both. However, some Compliance Documents have more than one Verification Method or Acceptable Solution. For example, the Compliance Document for Clause B1 of the Building Code has two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below.

- The Acceptable Solution for Clause E2 External Moisture is known as E2/AS1.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 Personal Hygiene is known as G1/AS1.

#### 3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

#### 3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

### 3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains Provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.

Building products or methods that are used in accordance with a product certificate as provided by section 269 of the Building Act must be accepted as complying with the Building Code.

### 3.3 Energy work certificate

Energy work is defined as gasfitting work or prescribed electrical work. An energy work certificate certifies that energy work complies with either the Electricity Act 1992 or the Gas Act 1992.

An energy work certificate must be accepted as establishing compliance with the relevant Performance requirements of the Building Code.
3.4 New Zealand Standard NZS 4121

Section 119 of the Building Act specifies that NZS 4121, the code of practice for design for access and use of buildings by persons with disabilities (and any modification of that Standard), is to be taken as a Compliance Document.

3.5 Determinations

A determination is a binding decision made by the Department. It provides a way of solving disputes or answering questions relating to the Building Code and territorial authority/building consent authority/regional authority decisions under the Building Act.

A range of matters can be determined, including:

- whether a building or building work complies with the Building Code
- a building consent authority’s decision on a building consent, a notice to fix, a code compliance certificate (CCC) or a compliance schedule
- a territorial authority’s decision to issue a building consent subject to a waiver or modification
- a territorial authority’s decision on a certificate of acceptance, a compliance schedule, a notice to fix, or a certificate for public use
- a regional authority’s or territorial authority’s exercise or failure to exercise its powers under the Building Act.

3.6 Alternative solutions

An alternative solution is a building solution that differs, in part or wholly, from the solutions offered by the Compliance Documents (an Acceptable Solution or Verification Method), but achieves compliance with the performance requirements of the Building Code to the satisfaction of the building consent authority.

There may be a number of reasons for the use of an alternative solution.

- There may not be a Compliance Document for the proposed construction, for example, if no Compliance Document is available for on-site effluent disposal.
- The building work may incorporate unusual design features that fall outside the scope of a Compliance Document.

Whatever the reason for using an alternative solution, the Building Code, being performance-based, allows for innovation and applicants have the freedom to propose an innovative solution. Refer to 2.3 ‘The New Zealand Building Code’.

3.7 Producer statements

A producer statement is a statement supplied by or on behalf of an applicant for a building consent, or by or on behalf of a person who has been granted a building consent. It is a statement that certain work will be, or has been, carried out in accordance with certain technical specifications.

Producer statements were introduced by the former Act and are no longer expressly referred to in the Building Act. A building consent authority may, at their discretion, accept and consider a producer statement as part of the plans or specifications for a building consent. This will assist the building consent authority in deciding whether it is satisfied on reasonable grounds the provisions of the Building Code will be met if the building work is completed in accordance with the plans and specifications. A building consent authority should have a formal procedure or policy in place for the use and consideration of producer statements, especially if a producer statement(s) will be required to prove building work complies with a building consent.
4.0 THE PARTIES AND THEIR RESPONSIBILITIES

Five principal parties are responsible for ensuring that buildings are safe and sanitary in line with the Building Act.

4.1 The Department of Building and Housing (the Department)

The Department has a range of statutory responsibilities for building and housing, and administers New Zealand’s building legislation. The Department’s building control functions include:

- advising the Minister for Building and Construction on matters relating to building control
- administering and reviewing the Building Code
- producing and maintaining Compliance Documents that specify prescriptive methods as a means of complying with the Building Code
- providing information, guidance, and advice on building controls to all sectors of the building industry and consumers
- implementing, administering and monitoring a system of regulatory controls for a vibrant sector with skilled building professionals
- making determinations, or technical rulings, on matters of interpretation, doubt or dispute.

4.2 Territorial authorities

Territorial authorities are responsible for enforcing the Building Act, Regulations and the Building Code in their areas of jurisdiction. They are responsible for:

- gaining accreditation as a building consent authority
- registering as a building consent authority
- performing the functions of a building consent authority

- issuing project information memoranda
- granting waivers or modifications of the Building Code (not including waivers or modifications relating to access and facilities for people with disabilities)
- issuing certificates of acceptance
- issuing certificates for public use
- determining the extent to which buildings must comply with the Building Code if they are altered, or their use is changed or where there is a specified intended life change
- enforcing the provisions relating to annual building warrants of fitness
- issuing certain notices provided for under the Building Act
- keeping records
- ensuring dangerous, insanitary and earthquake prone buildings are identified and appropriate action taken to remove any danger or insanitary condition
- amending compliance schedules
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.

4.3 Building consent authorities

Building consent authorities are responsible for:

- issuing building consents
- inspecting building work for which they granted a building consent
- issuing notices to fix
- issuing code compliance certificates
- issuing compliance schedules and amending them where the specified systems are affected by building work
- carrying out other functions and duties specified in the Building Act.
4.4 Regional authorities
Regional authorities are responsible for:
- performing the functions of a building consent authority to the extent that those functions relate to dams
- considering and approving dam classifications
- considering and approving dam safety assurance programmes
- administering the Building Act, relating to dam classifications, dam safety assurance programmes and dam compliance certificates
- enforcing provisions of the Building Code and the Building Act and regulations that relate to dams
- adopting a policy on dangerous dams.

4.5 Building owners
Building owners are responsible for:
- detailing work proposals on plans and specifications, including proposals for the inspection and routine maintenance of the specified systems for the purposes of the compliance schedule (if applicable)
- applying for building consents (and amendments to building consents) and project information memoranda
- constructing buildings in accordance with the ‘approved plans and specifications’
- organising inspections at given stages as building work progresses
- collecting energy work certificates
- applying for a code compliance certificate as soon as any work carried out under a building consent granted to them is completed
- maintaining buildings in a safe and sanitary manner
- ensuring any specified systems in their building are performing and will continue to perform to the performance standards
- supplying the annual building warrant of fitness, if applicable
- notifying the territorial authority if a change of use, extension of life, or subdivision is proposed
- paying any fees as required by the Building Act.

4.6 Licensed building practitioners (LBPs)
Building designers and constructors are the owner’s agents, so their role is not covered in the legislation. However, the Building Act does provide for a system of licensing building practitioners to improve control of and encourage better practices in building design and construction.
Licensed building practitioners are responsible for:
- carrying out or supervising restricted building work (from 30 November 2009)
- notifying building consent authorities of breaches of building consents (from 30 November 2009)
- issuing Form 12A certificates certifying the inspection, maintenance and reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule have been fully complied with for the previous 12 months
- recommending the compliance schedule be amended to ensure the stated specified systems are performing, and will continue to perform, to the applicable performance standards.

Note: The LBP’s role in regards to compliance schedules will continue to be carried out by independent qualified persons (IQPs) until November 2009. At the time of publication, licence classes for compliance schedule work are under development.
4.7 Past building control parties

4.7.1 The Building Industry Authority
The Building Industry Authority (the Authority) was a Crown entity, established under the former Act as the sole regulatory authority for building controls in New Zealand. The introduction of the Building Act 2004 has seen the dissolution of the Authority and transfer of its responsibilities to the Department.

4.7.2 Building certifier
A building certifier was a person approved by the Authority under the former Act to issue building certificates with respect to specific provisions of the Building Code. A building certifier may have been employed by a building owner as an alternative to using the territorial authority for checking technical proposals and performing inspections. Building certifiers are not provided for under the Building Act except for certain transitional arrangements.

5.0 BUILDING COMPLIANCE PROVISIONS

5.1 Project information memoranda (sections 31 to 39)
A project information memorandum (PIM) provides information known to the territorial authority/regional authority about land, and requirements of the Building Act and other Acts that might be relevant to proposed building work. A PIM is specific to the site and project. A PIM is a legal document and may have a notice attached to it requiring the owner to obtain other approvals or consents required by other legislation, such as the Resource Management Act 1991, prior to any work commencing on the project. For example, a PIM might include the fact that the height of a building may contravene a rule in the District Plan, meaning that before work commences, a separate resource consent is required from the territorial authority planning unit.

An application for a building consent is deemed to include an application for a PIM, unless one has been previously issued for the project and this is supplied with the building consent application. In most cases, PIMs and building consents are applied for in a single application. They will be processed as separate applications, but may be issued separately or jointly.

If the application for a PIM affects a registered historic place, historic area, wahi tapu, or wahi tapu area, and a PIM has not been issued for the building work to which the application applies, then the territorial authority must notify the New Zealand Historic Places Trust within five days after receiving the application.

If the territorial authority considers a development contribution under the Local Government Act 2002 is payable by the owner, it may attach a notice (Form 3) that advises the applicant that a code compliance certificate will not be issued until the development contribution is paid.

5.2 Building consents (sections 40 to 52)
A building consent is the formal approval, under section 49 of the Building Act, permitting an applicant to undertake building work in accordance with the plans and specifications approved by the building consent authority. Building work is the construction, alteration, demolition or removal of a building and includes sitework.

A person cannot carry out building work except in accordance with a building consent. There are some exemptions (see sections 41 and 43 and Schedule 1 of the Building Act), but section 17 still requires building work to be carried out in accordance with the Building Code, even if no building consent is required.
5.2.1 Alterations (Section 112)
Where proposed building work involves an alteration to an existing building, the consent must not be granted unless the building consent authority is satisfied that all new building work complies with the Building Code and:

- the altered building will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable with the Building Code provisions for means of escape from fire and access and facilities for people with disabilities, and
- the altered building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the alteration.

However, a territorial authority may allow the alteration of an existing building without complying with provisions of the Building Code specified by the territorial authority, if the territorial authority is satisfied that:

- if the building were required to comply with the relevant provisions of the Building Code, the alterations would not take place, and
- the alteration will result in improvements to attributes of the building that relate to means of escape from fire or access and facilities for persons with disabilities, and
- the improvements mentioned above outweigh any detriment that is likely to arise as a result of the building not complying with the relevant provisions of the Building Code.

5.2.2 Change of use (sections 114 and 115)
Uses of buildings are defined in Schedule 2 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

A change of use arises when two criteria are met. The first criterion is that a building’s use must change from one use in Schedule 2 to a different use in Schedule 2. The second criterion is the result of that change (first criterion) means the requirements for compliance with the Building Code for the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for the old use.

See Regulations 5 and 6 of the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Regulations 2005.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/regional authority if they propose to change the use of a building.

Where the owner proposes to change the use of a building to one or more household units, where household units did not exist before, they must obtain written notice from the territorial authority. This must state that the territorial authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with the Building Code in all respects (usually through the issue of a building consent).

For any other change of use proposal, the owner must get written notice from the territorial authority/regional authority, stating that the authority is satisfied, on reasonable grounds, that the building, in its new use, will comply, as nearly as is reasonably practicable, with every provision of the Building Code that relates to either or both of the following matters:

- means of escape from fire, protection of other property, sanitary facilities, structural performance, and fire-rating performance
- access and facilities for people with disabilities (if this is a requirement under section 118 of the Building Act).

The territorial authority/regional authority must also be satisfied that the building will continue to comply with the other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as before the change of use.

5.2.3 Extension of life (sections 114 and 116)
Where a building with a specified intended life is issued with a building consent that is subject to the condition that the building be altered before the end of its life, an ‘extension of life’ can be obtained.

An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority/regional authority if it proposes to extend the life of a building.
The territorial authority/regional authority can only give its consent to the extension of life if it is satisfied that:

- the building has been altered in accordance with the original condition
- the alteration complies with section 112 of the Building Act (Alterations).

5.2.4 Subdivision (sections 114 and 116A)
An owner of a building must give written notice to the territorial authority if it proposes to subdivide land in a manner that affects a building.

The territorial authority can only issue a certificate under section 224(f) (relating to cross lease, company lease, and unit titles) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the purpose of giving effect to a subdivision affecting a building or part of a building, if it is satisfied that the building will comply as nearly as reasonably practicable with every provision of the Building Code that relates to one or more of the following.

- Means of escape from fire
- Access and facilities for people with disabilities
- Protection of other property

The building must also continue to comply with other provisions of the Building Code to at least the same extent as it did before the application for subdivision was made.

5.2.5 Access for persons with disabilities (sections 117 to 120 and Schedule 2)
Any building (including parts of a building such as a driveway) that is open to the public, whether or not they are charged for entry, must have reasonable and adequate provision for access, parking and sanitary facilities for people with disabilities who may be expected to work or visit that building and carry out normal activities and processes in that building.

The most recent version of NZS 4121 Code of Practice for Design for Access and Use of Buildings by Persons with Disabilities is to be taken as a Compliance Document.

5.3 Code compliance certificate (sections 91 to 95)
A code compliance certificate (CCC) is a formal statement, issued under section 95 of the Building Act, which states that building work carried out under a building consent application complies with that building consent. A CCC provides assurance to the owner and subsequent property owners that the approved plans and specifications have been followed.

A CCC is not issued until all building work has been completed as per the plans and specifications submitted with the building consent application.

A CCC must be applied for after all building work carried out under a building consent granted to the owner is completed.

An application for a CCC where the building work was carried out under a consent granted under the former Act must be considered and determined as if the Building Act had not been passed. However, section 43(2) of the former Act must be read as if a CCC may only be issued if the territorial authority is satisfied that the building work complies with the Building Code that applied at the time the building consent was granted.

5.4 Certificates of acceptance (sections 96 to 99)
Certificates of acceptance were introduced by the Building Act. The certificate confirms that, to the extent an inspection was able to be carried out, the building work complies with the Building Code. A certificate of acceptance therefore has some similarities to a CCC in that it will provide some verification for a building owner, or future building owner, that all or part of the work is compliant.
A certificate of acceptance can be obtained in situations where:

- work has been done without a building consent when one should have been obtained
- a building consent authority or building certifier is unable or refuses to issue a CCC
- verification is required of urgent building work carried out under section 42 of the Building Act.

A certificate of acceptance can also be used in limited circumstances in relation to section 363B.

A certificate of acceptance is based on verification with the Building Code that was in place at the time of application. It is not based on what was in place at the time a building consent was granted, or should have been applied for, or when the work was actually carried out.

5.5 Notices to fix
(sections 163 to 168)

A notice to fix is a statutory notice requiring a person to remedy a breach of the Building Act or Regulations under the Act. A notice to fix can be issued for all breaches of the Building Act, including non-complying building work, and for an incorrect building warrant of fitness or a compliance schedule that is not being properly complied with. A notice to fix can state that all or any building work must cease immediately.

A building consent authority, regional authority or a territorial authority must issue a notice to fix for any contravention of the Building Act and Building Regulations under section 164 of the Building Act. When a notice to fix has been issued by a building consent authority that is not a territorial authority or a regional authority, the matter is then handed to the territorial authority or regional authority to decide whether the notice has been complied with.

Some examples of where notices could be issued include:

- carrying out building work other than in accordance with a building consent
- displaying an incorrect building warrant of fitness
- changing the use of a building without notifying the territorial authority or regional authority.

5.6 Compliance schedules
(sections 100 to 107)

A compliance schedule lists specified systems within a building. The compliance schedule for a building must identify which specified systems are present, the performance standards for those systems, and how those systems will be inspected and maintained to ensure they continue to function.

For more information on compliance schedules, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

5.7 Building warrants of fitness
(sections 108 to 111)

A building warrant of fitness (BWoF) is a statement supplied by a building owner, to the territorial authority confirming that the systems specified in the compliance schedule for their building have been maintained and checked in accordance with the compliance schedule for the previous 12 months, and will continue to perform as required. For more information on building warrants of fitness, see the Compliance Schedule Handbook.
5.8 Certificates for public use  
(section 363A)

A certificate for public use is a new safety provision under the Building Act. It is a tool that can be used to certify that premises or parts of premises affected by building work are safe to be used by the public. Certificates for public use can only be used where a building consent has been granted for the building work but no CCC has yet been issued. Certificates for public use do not relieve the owner of a building from the obligation to apply for a CCC after all the building work has been carried out.

5.9 Building certificate

A building certificate was a formal confirmation by a building certifier that specific aspects of a building would or do comply with the Building Code. A territorial authority was obliged to accept such a certificate. Building certificates were allowed for under the former Act, but are only included under the new Building Act as transitional allowances to phase them out.
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>General Provisions</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Classified uses</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Stability</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>Durability</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Fire Safety</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>Outbreak of fire</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>Means of escape</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td>Spread of fire</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4</td>
<td>Structural stability during fire</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Access</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>Access routes</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>Mechanical installations for access</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Moisture</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Surface water</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>External moisture</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>Internal moisture</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Safety of Users</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1</td>
<td>Hazardous agents on site</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2</td>
<td>Hazardous building materials</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3</td>
<td>Hazardous substances and processes</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4</td>
<td>Safety from falling</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5</td>
<td>Construction and demolition hazards</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F6</td>
<td>Lighting for emergency</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7</td>
<td>Warning systems</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F8</td>
<td>Signs</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G</th>
<th>Services and Facilities</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G1</td>
<td>Personal hygiene</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G2</td>
<td>Laundering</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G3</td>
<td>Food preparation and prevention of contamination</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G4</td>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G5</td>
<td>Interior environment</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G6</td>
<td>Airborne and impact sound</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7</td>
<td>Natural light</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G8</td>
<td>Artificial light</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G9</td>
<td>Electricity</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10</td>
<td>Piped services</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11</td>
<td>Gas as an energy source</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G12</td>
<td>Water supplies</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G13</td>
<td>Foul water</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14</td>
<td>Industrial liquid waste</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G15</td>
<td>Solid waste</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H</th>
<th>Energy Efficiency</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Energy efficiency</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A General Provisions

A1 Classified Uses

FIRST SCHEDULE--continued

Clause A1--CLASSIFIED USES

1.0 EXPLANATION

1.0.1 For the purposes of this building code buildings are classified according to type, under seven categories.

1.0.2 A building with a given classified use may have one or more intended uses as defined in the Act.

2.0 Housing

2.0.1 Applies to buildings or use where there is self care and service (internal management). There are three types:

2.0.2 Detached Dwellings

Applies to a building or use where a group of people live as a single household or family. Examples: a holiday cottage, boarding house accommodating fewer than 6 people, dwelling or hut.

2.0.3 Multi-unit Dwelling

Applies to a building or use which contains more than one separate household or family. Examples: an attached dwelling, flat or multi-unit apartment.

2.0.4 Group Dwelling

Applies to a building or use where groups of people live as one large extended family. Examples: within a commune or marae.

3.0 COMMUNAL RESIDENTIAL

3.0.1 Applies to buildings or use where assistance or care is extended to the principal users. There are two types.

3.0.2 Community Service

Applies to a residential building or use where limited assistance or care is extended to the principal users. Examples: a boarding house, hall of residence, holiday cabin, hostel, hotel, motel, nurses' home, retirement village, time-share accommodation, a work camp, or camping ground.

3.0.3 Community Care

Applies to a residential building or use where a large degree of assistance or care is extended to the principal users. There are two types:

a) Unrestrained; where the principal users are free to come and go. Examples: a hospital, an old people's home or a health camp.

b) Restrained; where the principal users are legally or physically constrained in their movements. Examples: a borstal or drug rehabilitation centre, an old people's home where substantial care is extended, a prison or hospital.

4.0 COMMUNAL NON-RESIDENTIAL

4.0.1 Applies to a building or use being a meeting place for people where care and service is provided by people other than the principal users. There are two types:
4.0.2 Assembly Service

Applies to a building or use where limited care and service is provided. Examples: a church, cinema, clubroom, hall, museum, public swimming pool, stadium, theatre, or whare runanga (the assembly house).

4.0.3 Assembly Care

Applies to a building or use where a large degree of care and service is provided. Examples: an early childhood centre, college, day care institution, centre for handicapped persons, kindergarten, school or university.

5.0 COMMERCIAL

5.0.1 Applies to a building or use in which any natural resources, goods, services or money are either developed, sold, exchanged or stored. Examples: an amusement park, auction room, bank, car-park, catering facility, coffee bar, computer centre, fire station, funeral parlour, hairdresser, library, office (commercial or government), police station, post office, public laundry, radio station, restaurant, service station, shop, showroom, storage facility, television station or transport terminal.

6.0 INDUSTRIAL

6.0.1 Applies to a building or use where people use material and physical effort to:

(a) extract or convert natural resources,
(b) produce goods or energy from natural or converted resources,
(c) repair goods, or
(d) store goods (ensuing from the industrial process).

Examples: an agricultural building, agricultural processing facility, aircraft hanger, factory, power station, sewage treatment works, warehouse or utility.

7.0 OUTBUILDINGS

7.0.1 Applies to a building or use which may be included within each classified use but are not intended for human habitation, and are accessory to the principal use of associated buildings. Examples: a carport, farm building, garage, greenhouse, machinery room, private swimming pool, public toilet, or shed.

8.0 ANCILLARY

8.0.1 Applies to a building or use not for human habitation and which may be exempted from some amenity provisions, but which are required to comply with structural and safety-related aspects of the building code. Examples: a bridge, derrick, fence, free standing outdoor fireplace, jetty, mast, path, platform, pylon, retaining wall, tank, tunnel or dam.
A2 Interpretation

This Clause of the New Zealand Building Code lists defined words used within the Code. Those definitions, plus defined word or terms used in the Compliance Documents, are included in the section on definitions in this Handbook.
## B Stability

### B1 Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury caused by structural failure,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity caused by structural behaviour, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Protect other property from physical damage caused by structural failure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.2</strong> Buildings, building elements and sitework shall withstand the combination of loads that they are likely to experience during construction or alteration and throughout their lives.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.1</strong> Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of rupturing, becoming unstable, losing equilibrium, or collapsing during construction or alteration and throughout their lives.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.2</strong> Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of causing loss of amenity through undue deformation, vibratory response, degradation, or other physical characteristics throughout their lives, or during construction or alteration when the building is in use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.3</strong> Account shall be taken of all physical conditions likely to affect the stability of buildings, building elements and sitework, including:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Self-weight,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Imposed gravity loads arising from use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Temperature,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>Limits on application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Earth pressure,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Water and other liquids,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Earthquake,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Snow,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Wind,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Fire,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Impact,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Explosion,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) Reversing or fluctuating effects,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Differential movement,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) Vegetation,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o) Adverse effects due to insufficient separation from other buildings,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p) Influence of equipment, services, non-structural elements and contents,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(q) Time dependent effects including creep and shrinkage, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(r) Removal of support.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B1.3.4** Due allowance shall be made for:

- The consequences of failure,
- The intended use of the building,
- Effects of uncertainties resulting from construction activities, or the sequence in which construction activities occur,
- Variation in the properties of materials and the characteristics of the site, and
- Accuracy limitations inherent in the methods used to predict the stability of buildings.

**B1.3.5** The demolition of buildings shall be carried out in a way that avoids the likelihood of premature collapse.

**B1.3.6** Sitework, where necessary, shall be carried out to:
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Provide stability for construction on the site, and (b) Avoid the likelihood of damage to other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B1.3.7</strong> Any sitework and associated supports shall take account of the effects of: (a) Changes in ground water level, (b) Water, weather and vegetation, and (c) Ground loss and slumping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B2.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to ensure that a building will throughout its life continue to satisfy the other objectives of this code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B2.2</strong> Building materials, components and construction methods shall be sufficiently durable to ensure that the building, without reconstruction or major renovation, satisfies the other functional requirements of this code throughout the life of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td>Performance B2.3.1 applies from the time of issue of the applicable code compliance certificate. Building elements are not required to satisfy a durability performance which exceeds the specified intended life of the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B2.3.1</strong> Building elements must, with only normal maintenance, continue to satisfy the performance requirements of this code for the lesser of the specified intended life of the building, if stated, or:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The life of the building, being not less than 50 years, if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Those building elements (including floors, walls, and fixings) provide structural stability to the building, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Those building elements are difficult to access or replace, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during both normal use and maintenance of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 15 years if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Those building elements (including the building envelope, exposed plumbing in the subfloor space, and in-built chimneys and flues) are moderately difficult to access or replace, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during normal use of the building, but would be easily detected during normal maintenance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 5 years if:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) The building elements (including services, linings, renewable protective coatings, and fixtures) are easy to access and replace, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would be easily detected during normal use of the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B2.3.2** Individual building elements which are components of a building system and are difficult to access or replace must either:

(a) All have the same durability, or

(b) Be installed in a manner that permits the replacement of building elements of lesser durability without removing building elements that have greater durability and are not specifically designed for removal and replacement.
### C Fire Safety

#### C1 Outbreak of Fire

---

**first schedule—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1.2 In buildings fixed appliances using the controlled combustion of solid, liquid or gaseous fuel, shall be installed in a way which reduces the likelihood of fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1.3.1 Fixed appliances and services shall be installed so as to avoid the accumulation of gases within the installation and in building spaces, where heat or ignition could cause uncontrolled combustion or explosion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1.3.2 Fixed appliances shall be installed in a manner that does not raise the temperature of any building element by heat transfer or concentration to a level that would adversely affect its physical or mechanical properties or function.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Objective**

**C2.1** The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness from a fire while escaping to a safe place, and

(b) Facilitate fire rescue operations.

**Functional Requirement**

**C2.2** Buildings shall be provided with means of escape from fire which:

(a) Give people adequate time to reach a safe place without being overcome by the effects of fire, and

(b) Give fire service personnel adequate time to undertake rescue operations.

**Performance**

**C2.3.1** The number of open paths available to each person escaping to an exitway or final exit shall be appropriate to:

(a) The travel distance.

(b) The number of occupants,

(c) The fire hazard, and

(d) The fire safety systems installed in the firecell.

**C2.3.2** The number of exitways or final exits available to each person shall be appropriate to:

(a) The open path travel distance,

(b) The building height,

(c) The number of occupants,

(d) The fire hazard, and

(e) The fire safety systems installed in the building.

**C2.3.3** Escape routes shall be:

(a) Of adequate size for the number of occupants,
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

Provisions

(b) Free of obstruction in the direction of escape,

(c) Of length appropriate to the mobility of the people using them,

(d) Resistant to the spread of fire as required by Clause C3 “Spread of Fire”; 

(e) Easy to find as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,

(f) Provided with adequate illumination as required by Clause F6 “Lighting for Emergency”, and

(g) Easy and safe to use as required by Clause D1.3.3 “Access Routes”.

Limits on application

Performance C2.3.3(b) must not prevent a door that forms part of an escape route from being locked if the person who locks it is satisfied that no-one is in that part of the building served by the escape route and that no one is likely to enter that part of the building, except in an emergency, without unlocking that door.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

#### Clause C3—SPREAD OF FIRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness when evacuating a building during fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Provide protection to fire service personnel during firefighting operations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Protect adjacent <em>household units</em>, other residential units, and <em>other property</em> from the effects of fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Safeguard the environment from adverse effects of fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3.2 Buildings shall be provided with safeguards against fire spread so that:</td>
<td>Requirement C3.2(d) applies only to buildings where significant quantities of <em>hazardous substances</em> are stored and processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Occupants have time to escape to a <em>safe place</em> without being overcome by the effects of fire,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Firefighters may undertake rescue operations and protect property,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Adjacent <em>household units</em>, other residential units, and <em>other property</em> are protected from damage, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Significant quantities of <em>hazardous substances</em> are not released into the environment during fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3.3.1 Interior surface finishes on walls, floors, ceilings and suspended <em>building elements</em>, shall resist the spread of fire and limit the generation of toxic gases, smoke and heat, to a degree appropriate to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The <em>travel distance</em>,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The number of occupants,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST SCHEDULE--continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) The fire hazard, and</td>
<td>Performance C3.3.2(b) does not apply to Detached Dwellings or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) The active fire safety systems installed in the building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.2 Fire separations</strong> shall be provided within buildings to avoid the spread of fire and smoke to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Other firecells,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Spaces intended for sleeping, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Household units within the same building or adjacent buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.3 Fire separations</strong> shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where openings occur, be provided with fire resisting closures to maintain the integrity of the fire separations for an adequate time, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where penetrations occur, maintain the fire resistance rating of the fire separation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.4 Concealed spaces and cavities</strong> within buildings shall be sealed and subdivided where necessary to inhibit the unseen spread of fire and smoke.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.5 External walls and roofs</strong> shall have resistance to the spread of fire, appropriate to the fire load within the building and to the proximity of other household units, other residential units and other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3.3.6 Automatic fire suppression systems</strong> shall be installed where people would otherwise be:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Unlikely to reach a safe place in adequate time because of the number of storeys in the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Required to remain within the building without proceeding directly to a final exit, or where the evacuation time is excessive,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance C3.3.4 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>Limits on application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Unlikely to reach a safe place due to confinement under institutional care because of mental or physical disability, illness or legal detention, and the evacuation time is excessive, or (d) At high risk due to the fire load and fire hazard within the building.</td>
<td>Performance C3.3.10 applies only to buildings where significant quantities of hazardous substances are stored or processed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C3.3.7 Air conditioning and mechanical ventilation systems shall be constructed to avoid circulation of smoke and fire between firecells.

C3.3.8 Where an automatic smoke control system is installed, it shall be constructed to:

(a) Avoid the spread of fire and smoke between firecells, and
(b) Protect escape routes from smoke until the occupants have reached a safe place.

C3.3.9 The fire safety systems installed shall facilitate the specific needs of fire service personnel to:

(a) Carry out rescue operations, and
(b) Control the spread of fire.

C3.3.10 Environmental protection systems shall ensure a low probability of hazardous substances being released to:

(a) Soils, vegetation or natural waters,
(b) The atmosphere, and
(c) Sewers or public drains.
**C4 Structural Stability During Fire**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury due to loss of structural stability during fire, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Protect household units and other property from damage due to structural instability caused by fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.2 Buildings shall be constructed to maintain structural stability during fire to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Allow people adequate time to evacuate safely,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Allow fire service personnel adequate time to undertake rescue and firefighting operations, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Avoid collapse and consequential damage to adjacent household units or other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.1 Structural elements of buildings shall have fire resistance appropriate to the function of the elements, the fire load, the fire intensity, the fire hazard, the height of the buildings and the fire control facilities external to and within them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.2 Structural elements shall have a fire resistance of no less than that of any element to which they provide support within the same firecell.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4.3.3 Collapse of elements having lesser fire resistance shall not cause the consequential collapse of elements required to have a higher fire resistance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# D Access

## D1 Access Routes

### Provisions

**OBJECTIVE**

**D1.1** The objective of this provision is:

- (a) Safeguard people from injury during movement into, within and out of buildings,
- (b) Safeguard people from injury resulting from the movement of vehicles into, within and out of buildings, and
- (c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to enter and carry out normal activities and functions within buildings.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT**

**D1.2.1** Buildings shall be provided with reasonable and adequate access to enable safe and easy movement of people.

**D1.2.2** Where a building is provided with loading or parking spaces, they shall be constructed to permit safe and easy unloading and movement of vehicles, and to avoid conflict between vehicles and pedestrians.

### Limits on application

Objective D1.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

Requirement D1.2.1 shall not apply to Ancillary buildings or Outbuildings.

### Performance

**D1.3.1** Access routes shall enable people to:

- (a) Safely and easily approach the main entrance of buildings from the apron or construction edge of a building,
- (b) Enter buildings,
- (c) Move into spaces within buildings by such means as corridors, doors, stairs, ramps and lifts,
- (d) Manoeuvre and park cars, and
- (e) Manoeuvre and park delivery vehicles required to use the loading space.

### Note:

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.3.2</strong> At least one access route shall have features to enable people with disabilities to:</td>
<td>Performance D1.3.2 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Approach the building from the street boundary or, where required to be provided, the building car park,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Have access to the internal space served by the principal access, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Have access to and within those spaces where they may be expected to work or visit, or which contain facilities for personal hygiene as required by Clause G1 “Personal Hygiene”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.3.3</strong> Access routes shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Have <em>adequate</em> activity space,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Be free from dangerous obstructions and from any projections likely to cause an obstruction,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Have a safe cross fall, and safe slope in the direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have <em>adequate</em> slip-resistant walking surfaces under all conditions of normal use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Include stairs to allow access to upper floors irrespective of whether an escalator or lift has been provided,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Have stair treads, and ladder treads or rungs which:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) provide <em>adequate</em> footing, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) have uniform rise within each flight and for consecutive flights,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Have stair treads with a leading edge that can be easily seen,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

Provisions

(h) Have stair treads which prevent children falling through or becoming held fast between treads, where open risers are used,

(i) Not contain isolated steps,

(j) Have smooth, reachable and graspable handrails to provide support and to assist with movement along a stair or ladder,

(k) Have handrails of adequate strength and rigidity as required by Clause B1 “Structure”,

(l) Have landings of appropriate dimensions and at appropriate intervals along a stair or ramp to prevent undue fatigue,

(m) Have landings of appropriate dimensions where a door opens from or onto a stair, ramp or ladder so that the door does not create a hazard, and

(n) Have any automatically controlled doors constructed to avoid the risk of people becoming caught or being struck by moving parts.

D1.3.4 An accessible route, in addition to the requirement of Clause D1.3.3, shall:

(a) Be easy to find, as required by Clause F8 “Signs”,

(b) Have adequate activity space to enable a person in a wheelchair to negotiate the route while permitting an ambulant person to pass,
1992/150  Building Regulations 1992  31

FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) Include a lift complying with Clause D2 &quot;Mechanical Installations for Access&quot; to upper floors where:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) buildings are four or more storeys high,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) buildings are three storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 50 or more persons on the two upper floors,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) buildings are two storeys high and have a total design occupancy of 40 or more persons on the upper floor, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) an upper floor, irrespective of design occupancy, is to be used for the purposes of public reception areas of banks, central, regional and local government offices and facilities, hospitals, medical and dental surgeries, and medical, paramedical and other primary health care centres,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Contain no thresholds or upstands forming a barrier to an unaided wheelchair user,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Have means to prevent the wheel of a wheelchair dropping over the side of the accessible route,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Have doors and related hardware which are easily used,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Not include spiral stairs, or stairs having open risers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Have stair treads with leading edge which is rounded, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) Have <strong>handrails</strong> on both sides of the <strong>accessible route</strong> when the slope of the route exceeds 1 in 20. The <strong>handrails</strong> shall be continuous along both sides of the stair, ramp and landing except where the <strong>handrail</strong> is interrupted by a doorway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.5.5</strong> Vehicle spaces and circulation routes shall have:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Dimensions appropriate to the intended use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Appropriate crossfall, and slope in the direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) <strong>Adequate</strong> queuing and circulation space, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) <strong>Adequate</strong> sight distances.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1.5.6</strong> Vehicle spaces for use by <strong>people with disabilities</strong>, shall, in addition to the requirements of <strong>Clause D1.5.5</strong>, be:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Provided in sufficient numbers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Located to avoid conflict between vehicles and people using or moving to or from the space, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Easy to find as required by <strong>Clause F8 Signs</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Clause D2—MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury and loss of amenity while using mechanical installations for movement into, within and out of buildings,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Safeguard maintenance personnel from injury while servicing mechanical installations for access, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.2 Mechanical installations for access into, within and out of buildings shall provide for the safe and easy movement of people, and for the safety of maintenance personnel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.3.1 Mechanical installations for access shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Move people safely, and stop and hold as required for the normal use of the installation, for all loads up to and including 25% in excess of the rated load,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Not produce excessive acceleration or deceleration,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people falling, tripping, becoming caught, being able to touch or be struck by moving parts, sharp edges or projections, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions of use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) Be constructed to prevent collision between components, or between components and the building,</td>
<td>Performance D2.3.3(d) shall not apply to installations travelling less than 15 m vertically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Have a control system that ensures safe abnormal operation in the event of overloading or failure of any single component, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Be capable of being isolated for inspection, testing and maintenance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D2.3.3** Mechanical installations for access shall be provided with:

- Adequate control over normal use, to ensure people’s safety throughout any operation involving starting, stopping or changing the direction of travel,
- Notification of position, where people are fully enclosed and the installation serves more than two levels,
- Adequate lighting and ventilation for both normal and emergency use, and
- Signs as required by Clause F8 “Signs”.

**D2.3.4** Potentially dangerous equipment shall be located in spaces which:
**FIRST SCHEDULE—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Are secure from unauthorised entry and contain only equipment associated with the installation,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Are appropriately sized and suitably guarded to provide adequate safe working areas for maintenance personnel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Are provided with adequate power and lighting for maintenance, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have an environment that ensures the safe operation of the equipment under all likely conditions of use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2.3.5</strong> Mechanical installations on accessible routes shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where the passenger conveyor is manually controlled, provide:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) controls which are easily identifiable and easy to use,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) adequate notification that the passenger conveyor has registered a summoning call, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) adequate notification that the passenger conveyor has arrived, and of its future direction of travel,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where the passenger conveyor is fully enclosed and serves more than two levels, provide an adequate means of informing occupants of their location,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Where appropriate, have doors which:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) are power operated,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) are readily distinguishable from their surroundings, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) where automatic, remain open sufficiently long to enable people with disabilities to pass through, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have handrails within the passenger conveyor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## E Moisture

### E1 Surface Water

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FIRST SCHEDULE—continued</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clause E1—SURFACE WATER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provisions</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E1.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness, and <em>other property</em> from damage, caused by <em>surface water</em>, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Protect the <em>outfalls</em> of drainage systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E1.2</strong> Buildings and <em>sitework</em> shall be constructed in a way that protects people and <em>other property</em> from the adverse effects of <em>surface water</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E1.3.1</strong> Except as otherwise required under the Resource Management Act 1991 for the protection of <em>other property</em>, <em>surface water</em>, resulting from an event having a 10% probability of occurring annually and which is collected or concentrated by <em>buildings</em> or <em>sitework</em>, shall be disposed of in a way that avoids the likelihood of damage or nuisance to <em>other property</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E1.3.2</strong> <em>Surface water</em>, resulting from an event having a 2% probability of occurring annually, shall not enter <em>buildings</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E1.3.3</strong> Drainage systems for the disposal of <em>surface water</em> shall be constructed to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Convey <em>surface water</em> to an appropriate <em>outfall</em> using gravity flow where possible,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockages,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Avoid the likelihood of leakage, penetration by roots, or the entry of ground water where pipes or lined channels are used,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Avoid the likelihood of damage to any <em>outfall</em>, in a manner acceptable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the <em>network utility operator</em>, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground movements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### E2 External Moisture

#### Provisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Provisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2.1</td>
<td>The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or injury which could result from external moisture entering the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.2</td>
<td>Buildings shall be constructed to provide adequate resistance to penetration by, and the accumulation of, moisture from the outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.1</td>
<td>Roofs shall shed precipitated moisture. In locations subject to snowfalls, roofs shall also shed melted snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.2</td>
<td>Roofs and exterior walls shall prevent the penetration of water that could cause undue dampness, or damage to building elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.3</td>
<td>Walls, floors and structural elements in contact with the ground shall not absorb or transmit moisture in quantities that could cause undue dampness, or damage to building elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.4</td>
<td>Building elements susceptible to damage shall be protected from the adverse effects of moisture entering the space below suspended floors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.5</td>
<td>Concealed spaces and cavities in buildings shall be constructed in a way which prevents external moisture being transferred and causing condensation and the degradation of building elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.3.6</td>
<td>Excess moisture present at the completion of construction, shall be capable of being dissipated without permanent damage to building elements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Limits on application

Requirement E2.2 shall not apply to buildings in which moisture from outside would result in effects which are no more harmful than those likely to arise indoors during normal use.
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

Clause E3–INTERNAL MOISTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people against illness, injury, or loss of amenity that could result from the accumulation of internal moisture; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Protect household units and other property from damage caused by free water from another household unit in the same building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.2</strong> Buildings must be constructed to avoid the likelihood of—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Fungal growth or the accumulation of contaminants on linings and other building elements; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Free water overflow penetrating to an adjoining household unit; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Damage to building elements being caused by the presence of moisture.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.1</strong> An adequate combination of thermal resistance, ventilation, and space temperature must be provided to all habitable spaces, bathrooms, laundries, and other spaces where moisture may be generated or may accumulate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.2</strong> Freewater from accidental overflow from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be disposed of in a way that avoids loss of amenity or damage to household units or other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.3</strong> Floor surfaces of any space containing sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be impervious and easily cleaned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Performance E3.3.1 does not apply to Communal Non-residential, Commercial, Industrial, Outbuildings or Ancillary buildings.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.4</strong> Wall surfaces adjacent to sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must be impervious and easily cleaned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.5</strong> Surfaces of building elements likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the intended use of the building, must be impervious and easily cleaned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E3.3.6</strong> Surfaces of building elements likely to be splashed must be constructed in a way that prevents water splash from penetrating behind linings or into concealed spaces.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
F Safety of Users

F1 Hazardous Agents on Site

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by hazardous agents or contaminants on a site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.2 Buildings shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of people within the building being adversely affected by hazardous agents or contaminants on the site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.3.1 Sites shall be assessed to determine the presence and potential threat of any hazardous agents or contaminants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1.3.2 The likely effect of any hazardous agent or contaminant on people shall be determined taking account of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) The intended use of the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The nature, potency or toxicity of the hazardous agent or contaminant, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The protection afforded by the building envelope and building systems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### F2 Hazardous Building Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F2.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury and illness caused by exposure to <em>hazardous building materials</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F2.2</strong> <em>Building</em> materials which are potentially <em>hazardous</em>, shall be used in ways that avoid undue risk to people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F2.3.1</strong> The quantities of gas, liquid, radiation or solid particles emitted by materials used in the <em>construction</em> of <em>buildings</em>, shall not give rise to harmful concentrations at the surface of the material where the material is exposed, or in the atmosphere of any space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F2.3.2</strong> Transparent panels capable of being mistaken for an unimpeded path of travel shall be marked to make them visible.</td>
<td><strong>Performance F2.3.2 does not apply to Housing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F2.3.3</strong> Glass or other brittle materials with which people are likely to come into contact shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) If broken on impact, break in a way which is unlikely to cause injury, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Resist a reasonably foreseeable impact without breaking, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Be protected from impact.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**F3 Hazardous Substances and Processes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F3.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness, and other property from damage, caused by hazardous substances or processes in buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F3.2</strong> Buildings where hazardous substances are stored and hazardous processes undertaken, shall be constructed to provide adequate protection to people and to other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F3.3</strong> Spaces in buildings where hazardous substances are stored, handled or used, or where hazardous processes are undertaken, shall be located and constructed to protect people, and other property, under both normal and reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions, and shall be provided with:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Means of restricting unauthorised access,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Means of preventing hazardous substances, or other materials unacceptable to the network utility operator, from entering sewers or public drains,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Means of allowing the harmless release of pressure where there is a significant risk of explosion occurring,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Protected ignition sources where flammable or explosive goods are stored,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Means of rendering harmless by ventilation, containment, dilution, or chemical or biological action, any radioactive, toxic or flammable vapours, gases or materials which may escape from pipes, vessels or containers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f) Impervious, easily cleaned surface finishes on building elements likely to be splashed or become contaminated in the course of the intended use of the building, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Signs as required by Clause F8 “Signs”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
F4 Safety from Falling

FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

Clause F4—SAFETY FROM FALLING

Provisions

OBJECTIVE
F4.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury caused by falling.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
F4.2 Buildings shall be constructed to reduce the likelihood of accidental fall.

PERFORMANCE
F4.3.1 Where people could fall 1 metre or more from an opening in the external envelope or floor of a building, or from a sudden change of level within or associated with a building, a barrier shall be provided.

F4.3.2 Roofs with permanent access shall have barriers provided.

F4.3.3 Swimming pools have a depth of water exceeding 400mm, shall have barriers provided.

F4.3.4 Barriers shall:
(a) Be continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard,
(b) Be of appropriate height,
(c) Be constructed with adequate rigidity,
(d) Be of adequate strength to withstand the foreseeable impact of people and, where appropriate, the static pressure of people pressing against them.
(e) Be constructed to prevent people from falling through them, and

Limits on application

Performance F4.3.1 shall not apply where such a barrier would be incompatible with the intended use of an area, or to temporary barriers on construction sites where the possible fall is less than 3 metres or to buildings providing pedestrian access in remote locations where the route served presents similar natural hazards.

Performance F4.3.3 shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f) In the case of a swimming pool, restrict the access of children under 6 years of age to the pool or the immediate pool area.</td>
<td>Performance F4.3.4 (f) shall not apply to any pool exempted under section 5 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Restrict the passage of children under 6 years of age when provided to guard a change of level in areas likely to be frequented by them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F4.3.5</strong> Barriers to swimming pools shall have in addition to performance F4.3.4:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) All gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by children, and constructed to automatically close and latch when released from any stationary position 150 mm or more from the closed and secured position, but excluding sliding and sliding-folding doors that give access to the immediate pool surround from a building that forms part of the barrier, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) No permanent objects on the outside of the barrier that could provide a climbing step.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**FIRST SCHEDULE--continued**

**Clause F5—CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION HAZARDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury, and other property from damage, caused by construction or demolition site hazards.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5.2 Construction and demolition work on buildings shall be performed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Objects falling onto people on or off the site,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Objects falling on property off the site,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Other hazards arising on the site affecting people off the site and other property, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Unauthorised entry of children to hazards on the site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5.3.1 Suitable construction methods shall be used to avoid the likelihood of tools or materials falling onto places where people might be present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5.3.2 Where construction or demolition work presents a hazard in places to which the public has access, barriers shall be provided and shall:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Be of appropriate height and construction to prevent site hazards from harming traffic or passersby,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Be difficult to climb,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Have no openings other than those approved by the territorial authority for access and viewing,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Have no gates or doors which project beyond the site when opened,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(e) Contain no projection that would be a hazard to traffic or people, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Be clearly marked where the barrier itself may otherwise present a hazard to traffic or passersby.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F5.3.3** Where a construction or demolition site contains any hazard which might be expected to attract the unauthorised entry of children, the hazard shall be enclosed to restrict access by children.

**F5.3.4** Suitable barriers shall be constructed to provide a safe route for people where lifting equipment creates a risk of accident from objects falling on a place of public access, or where a similar risk results from the height at which construction or demolition work is being carried out.
F6  Lighting for Emergency

FIRST SCHEDULE–continued

Clause F6–LIGHTING FOR EMERGENCY

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

F6.1  The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury due to inadequate lighting being available during an emergency.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F6.2  Buildings shall be provided with adequate lighting within all escape routes in an emergency.

PERFORMANCE

F6.3.1  An illuminance of 1 lux minimum shall be maintained at floor level throughout buildings for a period equal to 1.5 times the evacuation time or 30 minutes, whichever is the greater.

F6.3.2  Signs to indicate escape routes shall be provided as required by Clause F8 “Signs”.

Limits on application

Requirement F6.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, household units within Multi-unit Dwellings, Outbuildings or Ancillary buildings.

Performance F6.3.1 shall not apply to spaces infrequently inhabited such as plant rooms, storage areas and service tunnels.
**F7 Warning Systems**

{}  

**FIRST SCHEDULE—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause F7—WARNING SYSTEMS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provisions</strong></td>
<td><strong>Limits on application</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness due to lack of awareness of an emergency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7.2 Buildings shall be provided with appropriate means of warning people to escape to a safe place in an emergency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7.3.1 A means of warning must alert people to the emergency in adequate time for them to reach a safe place.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7.3.2 Appropriate means of detection and warning for fire must be provided within each household unit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7.3.3 Appropriate means of warning for fire and other emergencies must be provided in buildings as necessary to satisfy the other performance requirements of this code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Performance F7.3 does not apply to Outbuildings or Ancillary buildings.
F8 Signs

FIRST SCHEDULE–continued

Clause F8–SIGNS

Provisions

OBJECTIVE

F8.1 The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from injury or illness resulting from inadequate identification of escape routes, or of hazards within or about the building,
(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity due to inadequate direction, and
(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

F8.2 Signs shall be provided in and about buildings to identify:

(a) Escape routes,
(b) Emergency related safety features,
(c) Potential hazards, and
(d) Accessible routes and facilities for people with disabilities.

PERFORMANCE

F8.3.1 Signs shall be clearly visible and readily understandable under all conditions of foreseeable use.

F8.3.2 Signs indicating potential hazards shall be provided in sufficient locations to notify people before they encounter the hazard.

F8.3.3 Signs to facilitate escape shall:

(a) Be provided in sufficient locations to identify escape routes and guide people to a safe place, and

Limits on application

Objective F8.1 (c) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

Requirement F8.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, or within household units of Multi-unit Dwellings.

NOTE:

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) Remain visible in the event of a power failure of the main lighting supply, for the same duration as required by Clause F6 “Lighting for Emergency”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F8.3.4</strong> Signs shall be provided in sufficient locations to identify accessible routes and facilities provided for people with disabilities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
G Services and Facilities

G1 Personal Hygiene

1992/150 Building Regulations 1992

FIRST SCHEDULE – continued

Clause G1–PERSONAL HYGIENE

OBJECTIVE

G1.1 The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from illness caused by infection or contamination,
(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity arising from the absence of appropriate personal hygiene facilities, and
(c) Ensure people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G1.21 Buildings shall be provided with appropriate spaces and facilities for personal hygiene.

PERFORMANCE

G1.3.1 Sanitary fixtures shall be provided in sufficient number and be appropriate for the people who are intended to use them.

G1.3.2 Sanitary fixtures shall be located, constructed and installed to:

(a) Facilitate sanitation,
(b) Avoid risk of food contamination,
(c) Avoid harbouring dirt or germs,
(d) Provide appropriate privacy,
(e) Avoid affecting occupants of adjacent spaces from the presence of unpleasant odours, accumulation of offensive matter, or other source of annoyance,
(f) Allow effective cleaning,

Objective G1.1(c) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

NOTE:
Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(g) Discharge to a plumbing and drainage system as required by Clause G13 “Foul Water” when water-borne disposal is used, and (h) Provide a healthy safe disposal system when non-water-borne disposal is used.</td>
<td>Performance G1.3.4 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G1.3.3</strong> Facilities for personal hygiene shall be provided in convenient locations. <strong>G1.3.4</strong> Personal hygiene facilities provided for people with disabilities shall be accessible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Objective

**G2.1** The objective of this provision is to ensure:

(a) *Adequate amenities for people to do laundering,* and

(b) That *people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.*

### Functional Requirement

**G2.2** Buildings shall be provided with *adequate space and facilities* for laundering.

### Performance

**G2.3.1** Facilities shall have capacity for the *intended use,* and consist of *fixtures,* or space and services for appliances.

**G2.3.2** Space shall be *adequate in size* to provide for the installation and use of *fixtures* or appliances.

**G2.3.3** Space and facilities shall be provided within each accommodation unit or may be grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

**G2.3.4** *Accessible* facilities shall be provided for *people with disabilities.*

### Limits on application

Objective G2.1(b) shall apply only to those *buildings* to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

Requirement G2.2 shall apply only to *Housing,* old people's homes, early childhood centres, camping grounds and work camps.

Performance G2.3.4 shall apply only to camping grounds.

---

**NOTE:**

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
**FIRST SCHEDULE—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>G3—FOOD PREPARATION AND PREVENTION OF CONTAMINATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective</strong></td>
<td>G3.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from illness due to contamination,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Enable hygienic food preparation without loss of amenity, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functional Requirement</strong></td>
<td>G3.2.1 Buildings shall be provided with space and facilities for the hygienic storage, preparation and cooking of food, that are adequate for the intended use of the building,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G3.2.2 Buildings used for the storage, manufacture of processing of food, including animal products, shall be constructed to safeguard the contents from contamination,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G3.2.3 Buildings used for the medical treatment of humans or animals, or the reception of dead bodies, shall be constructed to avoid the spread of contamination from the building contents,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance</strong></td>
<td>G3.3.1 Food preparation facilities shall be hygienic and include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) Space for a refrigerator, or a perishable food storage area capable of being cooled and protected from vermin and insects,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Limits on application</strong></td>
<td>Objective G3.1 (c) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Requirement G3.2.1 shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes and early childhood centres, and where appropriate shall also apply to Commercial and Industrial buildings whose intended uses include the manufacture, preparation, packaging or storage of food,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Performance G3.3.1 (a) and (b) shall apply to Housing, work camps, old people’s homes, early childhood centres and Commercial or Industrial buildings whose intended uses include the handling of perishable food,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**
Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) Means for food rinsing, utensil washing and waste water disposal.</td>
<td>Performance G3.3.1 (c) shall apply to <em>Housing</em>, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Means for cooking food, and</td>
<td>Performance G3.3.1 (d) shall apply to <em>Housing</em>, work camps, old people's homes and early childhood centres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Space and a surface for food preparation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G3.3.2** Spaces for food preparation and utensil washing shall have:

(a) Interior linings and work surfaces shall be *impervious* and easily cleaned,

(b) All *building elements* constructed with materials which are free from *hazardous substances* which could cause contamination to the *building contents*, and

(c) Exposed *building elements* located and shaped to avoid the accumulation of dirt.

**G3.3.3** An *adequate energy supply* shall be provided, appropriately located for use by cooking and refrigeration appliances.

**G3.3.4** Space and facilities shall be provided within each *household unit*, or grouped elsewhere in a convenient location.

**G3.3.5** Where facilities are provided for *people with disabilities* they shall be *accessible.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G3.3.6</strong> Spaces in buildings shall be protected from the likelihood of contamination or vermin entering areas used for the storage, processing or preparation of food, and shall have a means of preventing contamination spreading from these areas to other spaces.</td>
<td>Performance G3.3.6 shall apply to Commercial or Industrial buildings whose intended uses include the handling of perishable food, the medical treatment of humans or animals, the slaughter of animals or the reception of dead bodies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Clawse G4—VENTILATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G4.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of amenity due to lack of fresh air.</td>
<td><strong>G4.2</strong> Spaces within buildings shall be provided with adequate ventilation consistent with their maximum occupany and their intended use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFORMANCE**

| **G4.3.1** Spaces within buildings shall have means of ventilation with outdoor air that will provide an adequate number of air changes to maintain air purity. | **G4.3.2** Mechanical air-handling systems shall be constructed and maintained in a manner that prevents harmful bacteria, pathogens and allergens from multiplying within them. |
| **G4.3.3** Buildings shall have a means of collecting or otherwise removing the following products from the spaces in which they are generated: | |
| (a) Cooking fumes and odours, | (c) Odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces, |
| (b) Moisture from laundering, utensil washing, bathing and showering, | (d) Gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from commercial or industrial processes, |
| (c) Odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces, | (e) Poisonous fumes and gases, |
| (d) Gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from commercial or industrial processes, | (f) Flammable fumes and gases, |
| (e) Poisonous fumes and gases, | (g) Airborne particles, |
| (f) Flammable fumes and gases, | (h) Bacteria, viruses or other pathogens, or |
| (g) Airborne particles, | (i) Products of combustion. |
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G4.3.4</strong> Contaminated air shall be disposed of in a way which avoids creating a nuisance or hazard to people and other property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G4.3.5</strong> The quantities of air supplied for ventilation shall meet the additional demands of any fixed <em>combustion appliances</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Objective G5.1

The objective of this provision is to:

(a) Safeguard people from illness caused by low air temperature,

(b) Safeguard people from injury or loss of amenity caused by inadequate activity space,

(c) Safeguard people from injury caused by unsafe installations, and

(d) Ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

### Functional Requirement G5.2.1

Buildings shall be constructed to provide:

(a) An adequate, controlled interior temperature,

(b) Adequate activity space for the intended use, and

(c) Accessible spaces and facilities.

### Performance G5.3.1

Habitable spaces, bathrooms and recreation rooms shall have the provision for maintaining the internal temperature at no less than 16°C measured at 750 mm above floor level, while the space is adequately ventilated.

### Limits on application

Objective G5.1 (d) shall apply to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

Requirement G5.2.1 (a) shall apply only to habitable spaces, bathrooms and recreation rooms in old people’s homes and early childhood centres.

Requirement G5.2.1 (b) shall apply only to old people’s homes.

Requirement G5.2.1 (c) shall apply only to Communal Residential, Communal Non-residential, and Commercial buildings.

Performance G5.3.1 shall apply only to old people’s homes and early childhood centres.

---

**NOTE:**

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G5.3.2</strong> Heating appliances, and any attached cables, pipes or other fittings shall be securely fixed in place.</td>
<td>Performance G5.3.2 shall apply only to old people's homes and early childhood centres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G5.3.3</strong> Habitable spaces shall have sufficient space for activity, furniture, and sanitary and mobility aids.</td>
<td>Performance G5.3.3 shall apply only to old people's homes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G5.3.4</strong> Where reception counters or desks are provided for public use, at least one counter or desk shall be accessible.</td>
<td>Performance G5.3.4 applies only to Communal Residential, Communal Non-Residential, and Commercial buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G5.3.5</strong> Buildings shall be provided with listening systems which enable enhanced hearing by people with hearing aids.</td>
<td>Performance G5.3.5 applies only to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G5.3.6</strong> Enhanced listening systems shall be identified by signs complying the Clause F8 “Signs”.</td>
<td>(a) Communal Non-residential assembly spaces occupied by more than 250 people, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Any theatre, cinema, or public hall, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Assembly spaces in old people's homes occupied by more than 20 people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**G6 Airborne and Impact Sound**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G6.1</strong> The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of amenity as a result of undue noise being transmitted between abutting occupancies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G6.2</strong> Building elements which are common between occupancies, shall be constructed to prevent undue noise transmission from other occupancies or common spaces, to the habitable spaces of household units.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G6.3.1</strong> The Sound Transmission Class of walls, floors and ceilings, shall be no less than 55.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G6.3.2</strong> The Impact Insulation Class of floors shall be no less than 55.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause G7—NATURAL LIGHT</td>
<td>Limits on application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from illness or loss of amenity due to isolation from natural light and the outside environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td>Requirement G7.2 shall apply only to Housing, old people's homes and early childhood centres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.2 Habitable spaces shall provide adequate openings for natural light and for a visual awareness of the outside environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.3.1 Natural light shall provide an illuminance of no less than 30 lux at floor level for 75% of the standard year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G7.3.2 Openings to give awareness of the outside shall be transparent and provided in suitable locations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Clause G8—ARTIFICIAL LIGHT

### OBJECTIVE

G8.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury due to lack of adequate lighting.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G8.2 Spaces within buildings used by people, shall be provided with adequate artificial lighting which, when activated in the absence of sufficient natural light, will enable safe movement.

### PERFORMANCE

G8.3 Illuminance at floor level shall be no less than 20 lux.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Requirement G8.2 shall apply to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) All exitways in Multi-unit Dwellings, Group Dwellings and Communal Residential, Communal Non-residential, Commercial and Industrial buildings,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) All access routes except those in Outbuildings and Ancillary buildings, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) All common spaces within Multi-unit Dwellings, Group Dwellings, and Communal Residential and Communal Non-residential buildings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance G8.3 shall not apply in emergencies, for which Illuminance requirements are given in Clause F6 “Lighting for Emergency”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clause G9—ELECTRICITY

OBJECTIVE
G9.1 The objective of this provision is to ensure that:
(a) In buildings supplied with electricity, the electrical installation has safeguards against outbreak of fire and personal injury, and
(b) People with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and processes within buildings.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
G9.2 Where provided in a building, electrical installations shall be safe for their intended use.

PERFORMANCE
G9.3.1 The electrical installation shall incorporate systems to:
(a) Protect people from contact with parts of the installation which are live during normal operation, and to prevent parts of the installation or other building elements becoming live during fault conditions,
(b) Permit the safe isolation of the installation and of electrical fittings and appliances,
(c) Safeguard people from excessive temperatures resulting from either normal operation of electrical equipment, or from currents which could exceed the installation rating,
(d) Safeguard people from injury which may result from electromechanical stress in electrical components caused by currents in excess of the installation rating.

Limits on application
Objective G9.1(b) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

NOTE:
Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(e) Protect building elements from risk of ignition, impairment of their physical or mechanical properties, or function, due to temperature increases resulting from heat transfer or electric arc,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Operate safely in its intended environment, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Safeguard against ignition of the surrounding atmosphere where it is potentially flammable or explosive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G9.3.2** An electrical installation supplying an essential service shall:

(a) Maintain the supply for a time appropriate to that service, and

(b) Be capable of being isolated from the supply system, independently of the remainder of the installation.

**G9.3.3** An electrical installation connected to an electrical supply system, shall contain safeguards which protect the safety features of the external supply.

**G9.3.4** In buildings intended for use by people with disabilities, light switches and plug socket outlets shall be accessible and usable.

Performance G9.3.4 shall not apply to Housing, Outbuildings, Ancillary buildings, and to Industrial buildings where no more than 10 people are employed.
**G10 Piped Services**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by extreme temperatures or hazardous substances associated with building services.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.2 In buildings provided with potentially hazardous services containing hot, cold, flammable, corrosive or toxic fluids, the installations shall be constructed to provide adequate safety for people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.1 Piping systems shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Significant leakage or damage during normal or reasonably foreseeable abnormal conditions,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Detrimental contamination of the contents by other substances,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Adverse interaction between services, or between piping and electrical systems, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) People having contact with pipes which could cause them harm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.2 Provision shall be made for the ready removal of moisture or condensate in gas pipes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.3 Pipes shall be protected against corrosion in the environment of their use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10.3.4 Piping systems shall be identified with markings if the contents are not readily apparent from the location or associated equipment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>Limits on application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G10.3.5</strong> Enclosed spaces shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of accumulating vented or leaking gas.</td>
<td><strong>G10.3.6</strong> Piped systems shall have isolation devices which permit the installation or individual items of apparatus to be isolated from the supply system, for maintenance, testing, fault detection and repair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**G11 Gas as an Energy Source**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OBJECTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.1 The objective of this provision is to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Safeguard people from injury arising from the use of gas as an energy source,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Safeguard people and other property from the risk of fire or explosion, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Safeguard people from loss of amenity due to the gas supply being inadequate for the intended use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.2 In buildings where gas is used as an energy source, the supply system shall be safe and adequate for its intended use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.3.1 Supply systems shall be constructed to maintain a safe pressure range appropriate to the appliances and the type of gas used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.3.2 The gas supply to all appliances in a single ventilated space, shall be fitted with an automatic cut-off activated by failure of any continuous forced ventilation system used for combustion, ventilation or safe operation of a fixed gas appliance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.3.3 A flued fixed gas appliance shall have no adverse interaction with any other flued appliance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G11.3.4 Supply systems shall have isolation devices which permit the whole installation, or individual items of apparatus, to be isolated from the supply for maintenance, testing, fault detection or repair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions</td>
<td>Limits on application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.5</strong> Where gas is supplied from an external source, the supply system within <em>buildings</em> shall be constructed to avoid the likelihood of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Contamination of the external supply from other gas sources within the <em>building</em>,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Adverse effects on the pressure of the external supply, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) The external supply pipe acting as an earthing conductor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G11.3.6</strong> The location and installation of meters and service risers shall meet the requirements of the <em>network utility operator</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
G12 Water Supplies

Provisions

**Objective**

G12.1 The objective of this provision is to:

(a) safeguard people from illness caused by contaminated water;
(b) safeguard people from injury caused by hot water system explosion, or from contact with excessively hot water;
(c) safeguard people from loss of amenity arising from:
   (i) a lack of hot water for personal hygiene; or
   (ii) water for human consumption, which is offensive in appearance, odour or taste;
(d) ensure that people with disabilities are able to carry out normal activities and functions within buildings.

**Functional requirement**

G12.2 Buildings provided with water outlets, sanitary fixtures, or sanitary appliances must have safe and adequate water supplies.

**Performance**

G12.3.1 Water intended for human consumption, food preparation, utensil washing, or oral hygiene must be potable.

G12.3.2 A potable water supply system shall be:

(a) protected from contamination; and
(b) installed in a manner which avoids the likelihood of contamination within the system and the water main; and
(c) installed using components that will not contaminate the water.

G12.3.3 A non-potable water supply system used for personal hygiene shall be installed in a manner that avoids the likelihood of illness or injury being caused by the system.

G12.3.4 Water pipes and outlets provided with non-potable water shall be clearly identified.

**Limits on application**

Objective G12.1(d) shall apply only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

Note

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
### Provisions

**Performance**—continued

**G12.3.5** Sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances must be provided with hot water when intended to be used for—

(a) utensil washing; and
(b) personal washing, showering, or bathing.

**G12.3.6** Where hot water is provided to sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances, used for personal hygiene, it must be delivered at a temperature that avoids the likelihood of scalding.

**G12.3.7** Water supply systems must be installed in a manner that—

(a) pipes water to sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances flow rates that are adequate for the correct functioning of those fixtures and appliances under normal conditions; and
(b) avoids the likelihood of leakage; and
(c) allows reasonable access to components likely to need maintenance; and
(d) allows the system and any backflow prevention devices to be isolated for testing and maintenance.

**G12.3.8** Vessels used for producing or storing hot water must be provided with safety features that—

(a) relieve excessive pressure during both normal and abnormal conditions; and
(b) limit temperatures to avoid the likelihood of flash steam production in the event of rupture.

**G12.3.9** A hot water system must be capable of being controlled to prevent the growth of legionella bacteria.

**G12.3.10** Water supply taps must be accessible and usable for people with disabilities.

### Limits on application

Performance G12.3.5(b) shall apply only to housing, retirement homes and early childhood centres.

Performance G12.3.10 applies only to those buildings to which Section 47A of the Act applies.

---

**Note**

Section 47A is in the Building Act 1991. The equivalent section in the Building Act 2004 is section 118.
Clause G13—FOUL WATER

OBJECTIVE

G13.1 The objective of this provision is to:
(a) Safeguard people from illness due to infection or contamination resulting from personal hygiene activities, and
(b) Safeguard people from loss of amenity due to the presence of unpleasant odours or the accumulation of offensive matter resulting from foul water disposal.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT

G13.2 Buildings, in which sanitary fixtures and sanitary appliances using water-borne waste disposal are installed, shall be provided with an adequate plumbing and drainage system to carry foul water to appropriate outfalls.

PERFORMANCE

G13.3.1 The plumbing system shall be constructed to:
(a) Convey foul water from buildings to a drainage system,
(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
(c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering buildings, and
(d) provide reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages.

G13.3.2 The drainage system shall:
(a) Convey foul water to an appropriate outfall,
(b) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of blockage.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) Be supported, jointed and protected in a way that will avoid the likelihood of penetration of roots or the entry of ground water,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Be provided with reasonable access for maintenance and clearing blockages,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Be ventilated to avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating in the drainage system and <strong>sewer</strong>, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Be constructed to avoid the likelihood of damage from superimposed loads or normal ground movement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G13.3.3** Where a **sewer** connection is available, the drainage system shall be connected to the **sewer**, and the connection shall be made in a manner that avoids damage to the **sewer** and is to the approval of the network utility operator.

**G13.3.4** Where no **sewer** is available, an **adequate** on-site disposal system shall be provided for **foul water** in the same manner as detailed in clause G14 “Industrial Liquid Waste”.
## G14 Industrial Liquid Waste

### OBJECTIVE
**G14.1** The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination resulting from industrial liquid waste.

### FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
**G14.2** Buildings in which industrial liquid waste is generated shall be provided with adequate spaces and facilities for the safe and hygienic collection, holding, treatment and disposal of the waste.

### PERFORMANCE
**G14.3.1** Industrial liquid waste shall be conveyed to storage containers and within disposal systems in a way which will:

- (a) Transfer wastes from buildings safely and hygienically,
- (b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage and leakage,
- (c) Avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases entering buildings, and
- (d) Provides reasonable access for clearing of blockages.

**G14.3.2** Facilities for the storage, treatment, and disposal of industrial liquid waste shall be constructed:

- (a) With adequate capacity for the volume of waste and the frequency of disposal,
- (b) With adequate vehicle access for collection if required,
- (c) To avoid the likelihood of contamination of any potable water supplies in compliance with Clause G12 “Water Supplies”,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G14.1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G14.2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G14.3.1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G14.3.2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) To avoid the likelihood of contamination of soils, ground water and waterways except as permitted under the Resource Management Act 1991.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) From materials which are impervious both to the waste for which disposal is required, and to water,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) To avoid the likelihood of foul air and gases accumulating within or entering into buildings,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) To avoid the likelihood of unauthorised access by people, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) To permit easy cleaning and maintenance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

Clause G15—SOLID WASTE

Provisions

OBJECTIVE
G15.1 The objective of this provision is to safeguard people from injury or illness caused by infection or contamination from solid waste.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENT
G15.2 Buildings shall be provided with space and facilities for the collection, and safe hygienic holding prior to disposal, of solid waste arising from the intended use of the buildings.

PERFORMANCE
G15.3.1 Where provision is made within buildings for the collection and temporary holding of solid waste, the spaces provided shall be:

(a) Of sufficient size for the volume of waste and frequency of disposal,
(b) Provided with reasonable access for the depositing and collection of the waste,
(c) Capable of maintaining sanitary conditions having regard to the types of waste and storage containers, and
(d) Capable of maintaining the appropriate temperature for the type of waste stored.

G15.3.2 Where a rubbish chute is provided, it shall be located and constructed to:

(a) Convey the solid waste to an appropriate storage container,
(b) Avoid the likelihood of blockage or leakage,
(c) Permit easy cleaning and maintenance,

Limits on application

Requirement G15.2 shall not apply to Detached Dwellings, household units of Multi-unit Dwellings, Outbuildings or Ancillary buildings if there is independent access or private open space at ground level.
### FIRST SCHEDULE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(d) Avoid the likelihood of foul air or gases accumulating or entering the building,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Avoid the likelihood of the spread of fire beyond the refuse chute,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Have openings that allow waste to be safely deposited in the chute, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Restrict access by children, animals and vermin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G15.3.3** Where it is acceptable to the network utility operator, solid waste which has been suitably treated for disposal to a sewer may be discharged via a *foul water drain* complying with Clause G13 “Foul Water”.
5 Clause H1 of code (energy efficiency provisions) replaced
The First Schedule of the principal regulations is amended by revoking clause H1, and substituting the following clause:

### Clause H1—Energy efficiency provisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provisions</th>
<th>Limits on application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective</strong></td>
<td>Objective H1.1 applies only when the energy is sourced from a network utility operator or a depletable energy resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1.1 The objective of this provision is to facilitate efficient use of energy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functional requirement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1.2 Buildings must be constructed to achieve an adequate degree of energy efficiency when that energy is used for—</td>
<td>Requirement H1.2(a) does not apply to assembly service buildings, industrial buildings, outbuildings, or ancillary buildings, or to plant and equipment provided to modify temperature, humidity, or both.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) modifying temperature or humidity, or both; or</td>
<td>Requirement H1.2(c) applies only to commercial buildings and communal non-residential buildings whose floor area is greater than 300 m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) providing hot water to sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances, or both; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) providing artificial lighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance</strong></td>
<td>Performance H1.3.2 applies only to housing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1.3.1 The building envelope enclosing spaces where the temperature or humidity (or both) are modified must be constructed to—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) provide adequate thermal resistance; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) limit uncontrollable airflow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1.3.2 Buildings must be constructed to ensure that the building performance index does not exceed:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 0.13 kWh in a warm location; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 0.12 kWh in a cool location.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Provisions

H1.3.3 Account must be taken of physical conditions likely to affect energy performance of buildings, including—
(a) the thermal mass of building elements; and
(b) the building orientation and shape; and
(c) the airtightness of the building envelope; and
(d) the heat gains from services, processes and occupants; and
(e) the local climate; and
(f) heat gains from solar radiation.

H1.3.4 Systems for the heating, storage, or distribution of hot water to sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances must, having regard to the energy source used,—
(a) limit the energy lost in the heating process; and
(b) be constructed to limit heat losses from storage vessels, and from distribution systems connected to storage vessels.

H1.3.5 Artificial lighting fixtures must—
(a) be located and sized to limit energy use, consistent with the intended use of space; and
(b) be fitted with a means to enable light intensities to be reduced, consistent with reduced activity in the space.

Limits on application

Performance H1.3.4(b) applies only where individual storage vessels are 700 litres or less in capacity.

Performance H1.3.5 does not apply to lighting provided solely to meet the requirements of clause F6.

Marie Shroff,
Clerk of the Executive Council.
Publications Referenced in Handbook and Compliance Documents

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Compliance Documents in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example: B1/VM1/AS3 indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 of the Compliance Document for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Compliance Document.

### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards New Zealand</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standards New Zealand</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards Australia</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Standards Institution</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Publications (other than Standards)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Publications</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US Publications</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Standards New Zealand

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS/BS 21: 1985</td>
<td>Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS/BS 143, and BS 1256: 1993</td>
<td>Specification for malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy threaded pipe fittings</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 202: 1966</td>
<td>Specification for steel pipes and joints for hydraulic purposes</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 380: 1968</td>
<td>Specification for flameproof electric lighting fittings</td>
<td>F6/AS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NZS/BS 476:-  Fire tests on building materials and structures
  Part 20: 1987  Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles)
    Amend: 6487
  Part 21: 1987  Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction
  Part 22: 1987  Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

NZS/BS 970:-  Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes
  Part 1: 1991  General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels

AS/NZS 1221: 1997  Fire hose reels

AS/NZS 1260: 1999  PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications

NZS/BS 1387: 1985  Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads

AS/NZS 1477: 1999  PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications

AS/NZS 1530:-  Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures
  Part 3: 1999  Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release

NZS/BS 1560:-  Circular flanges for pipes, valves and fittings (class designated)
  Part 3:-  Steel, cast iron and copper alloy flanges
    Section 3.1: 1989 Specification for steel flanges
    Section 3.2: 1989 Specification for cast iron flanges

AS/NZS 1646: 2000  Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes

NZS/AS 1650: 1989  Hot-dipped galvanised coatings on ferrous articles

NZS/AS 1657: 1992  Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)

AS/NZS 1664:-  Aluminium structures
  Part 1: 1997  Limit state design
    Amend: 1
  Part 2: 1997  Allowable stress design
    Amend: 1

Where quoted

C/AS1
G13/AS1/AS2
G10/AS1, G12/AS1,
G14/VM1
G12/AS1
C/AS1
E1/AS1
G10/AS1, G12/AS1,
G14/VM1
G13/AS2
B1/AS2/AS3
D1/AS1
B1/VM1
B1/VM1
AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings
  Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings
  Part 2: 1991 Mechanical ventilation for acceptable indoor-air quality

AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins

NZS/BS 1740:- Specification for wrought steel pipe fittings
  (screwed BS 21 – R series thread)
    Amend: 1, 2, 3

AS/NZS 1748: Mechanically strong graded timber

NZS 1900: Model building bylaw
  Ch 11: 1985 Special structures
  Division 11.2 Farm buildings
    Amend: 1

AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls
  Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets

AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes

NZS/AS 2033: 1980 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems

AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects

AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards

AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural

AS/NZS 2280: 1999 Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings

AS/NZS 2293:- Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings
  Part 1: 1995 System design, installation and operation
  Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance
  Part 3: 1995 Emergency luminaires and exit signs

NZS/BS 2494: 1990 Specification for elastomeric seals for joints in pipework and pipelines

AS/NZS 2642:- Polybutylene pipe systems
  Part 1: 1994 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds
  Part 2: 1994 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications
  Part 3: 1994 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications
    Amend: 1
NZS/BS 2654: 1989 Specification for manufacture of vertical steel welded non-refrigerated storage tanks with butt-welded shells for the petroleum industry

AS/NZS 2728: 1997 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications
- Performance requirements

AS/NZS 2845:- Water supply
  Part 1: 1998 Materials, design and performance requirements

AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings

AS/NZS 2908: Cellulose-cement products
  Part 2: 2000 Flat sheet

AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation

NZS/BS 2971: 1991 Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids

NZS 3101:- Concrete structures standard
  Part 1: 1995 The design of concrete structures
  Amend: 1, 2, 3

NZS 3106: 1986 Code of practice for concrete structures for the storage of liquids
  Amend: 1, 2

NZS 3107: 1978 Specification for precast concrete drainage and pressure pipes

NZS 3109: 1997 Specification for concrete construction
  Amend: 2

NZS 3112:- Methods of test for concrete
  Part 2: 1986 Tests relating to the determination of strength of concrete
  Amend: 1

NZS 3114: 1987 Specification for concrete surface finishes
  Amend: 1

NZS 3116: 1991 Interlocking concrete block paving

NZS 3124: 1987 Specification for concrete construction for minor works

NZS 3302: 1983 Specification for ceramic pipes, fittings and joints

NZS 3331: 1972 Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances

NZS 3402: 1989 Steel bars for the reinforcement of concrete

NZS 3404:- Steel structures standard
  Part 1: 1997 Steel structures standard

NZS 3421: 1975 Specification for hard drawn mild steel wire for concrete reinforcement

Where quoted

| G14/VM1 |
| E2/AS1 |
| G12/AS1 |
| E2/AS1 |
| C/AS1 |
| G10/AS1, G14/VM1 |
| B2/AS1 |
| B1/VM1 |
| G14/VM1 |
| B1/VM1 |
| B1/VM1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1 |
| B1/AS3 |
| B1/AS3 |
| D1/AS1, G15/AS1 |
| D1/AS1 |
| E1/AS1 |
| E1/AS1, G14/VM1 |
| G1/AS1 |
| B1/AS3 |
| B1/VM1 |
| B1/AS3 |

NZS 3441: 1978 Specification for hot-dipped zinc-coated steel coil and cut lengths

AS/NZS 3500:- National plumbing and drainage code
  Part 1: 2003 Water services
    Amend: 1
  Part 2: 2003 Sanitary plumbing and drainage
    Amend: 1
  Part 4: 2003 Heated water services
    Amend: 1

NZS 3501: 1976 Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation
  Amend: 1, 2 and 3

NZS 3502: 1976 Specification for copper and copper alloy tubes for general engineering purposes

NZS 3601: 1973 Metric dimensions for timber
  Amend: 1, 2

NZS/BS 3601: 1987 Specification for carbon steel pipes and tubes (1993) with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes
  Amend: 1, 2

NZS 3602:-

NZS 3603: 1993 Timber structures standard
  Amend: 1, 2

NZS 3604: 1999 Timber framed buildings
  Amend: 1


NZS 3617: 1979 Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring

NZS 3631: 1988 New Zealand timber grading rules

NZMP 3640: 1992 Specification of the minimum requirements of the NZ Timber Preservation Council Inc.
  Amend: 1

AS/NZS 3661:- Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces
  Part 1: 1993 Requirements
  Part 2: 1994 Guide to the reduction of slip hazards
AS/NZS 3622: 2004 Verification of timber properties

AS/NZS 3666: Air-handling and water systems of buildings – Microbial Control
  Part 1: 2002 Design, installation and commissioning
  Part 2: 2002 Operation and maintenance
  Part 3: 2000 Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems

NZS/AS 3725: 1989 Loads on buried concrete pipes


AS/NZS 3896: 1998 Waters – Examination for legionellae including Legionella pneumophila
  Amend: 1

AS/NZS 4020: 2002 Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water

NZS 4121: 2001 Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities

AS/NZS 4130: 1997 Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications

AS/NZS 4200: Pliable building membranes and underlays
  Part 1: 1994 – Materials
  Part 2: 1995 Pliable building membranes and underlays: Materials
  Part 3: 1994 Pliable building membranes and underlays: Methods of test
  Part 4: 1994 Resistance to water penetration
  Part 5: 1994 Shrinkage
  Part 7: 1994 Surface water absorbency

NZS 4203: 1984 Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings
  Amend: 1

NZS 4203: 1992 Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings
  Corrigendum: 1

NZS 4206: 1992 Concrete interlocking roofing tiles

  Amend: 1, 2

NZS 4211: 1985 Specification for performance of windows
  Amend: 1, 2, 3

NZS 4214: 1977 Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings

Where quoted

B1/VM1

HB/SS 9

G4/AS1, HB/SS 9

G4/AS1, HB/SS 9

B1/VM1

C/AS1

HB/SS 9

E2/AS1

D1/AS1, G1/AS1, G5/AS1

G12/AS1, G13/AS2

E2/AS1

B1/VM1, G10/AS1

B1/VM1, V4, C/AS1, E2/VM1/AS1

E2/AS1

B1/AS3

B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1

E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1
| NZS 4217:- | Pressed metal tile roofs  
| NZS 4218: 1996 Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope  |
| NZS 4219: 1983 Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings  
   Amend: 1, 2  |
| NZS 4223:- | Code of practice for glazing in buildings  
Part 1: 1985 The selection and installation of glass in buildings  
   Amend: 1, 2  
Part 2: 1985 The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units  
   Amend: 1, 2  
Part 3: 1999 Human impact safety requirements  |
| NZS 4229: 1999 Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design  
   Amend: 1  |
| NZS 4230:- | Code of practice for the design of masonry structures  
Part 1: 1990 Structures  
   Amend: 1, 2  
Part 2: 1990 Commentary  
   Amend: 1, 2  |
| NZS 4231: 1985 Specification for self-luminous exit signs  
   Amend: A  |
| NZS 4232:- | Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures  
Part 2: 1988 Fire resisting glazing systems  |
| NZS HB 4236: 2002 Masonry veneer wall cladding  |
| NZS 4239: 1993 Automatic sliding door assemblies  
   Amend: A  |
| NZS 4243: 1996 Energy efficiency – large buildings  |
| NZS 4251:- | Solid plastering  
Part 1: 1998 Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits  |
| AS/NZS 4256: 1994 Plastic roof and wall cladding materials  
Part 2: 1994 Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets  |
| AS/NZS 4284: 1995 Testing of building facades  |

Where quoted
- E2/AS1
- E2/AS1
- H1/VM1/AS1
- B1/VM1, G10/AS1, G14/VM1
- B1/AS1
- B1/AS1
- B1/AS1, F2/AS1
- B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2
- B1/VM1
- B1/VM1
- F8/AS1
- HB/SS 15
- C/AS1
- E2/AS1
- HB/SS 3
- H1/VM1/AS1
- B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS1
- E2/AS1
- E2/VM1
NZS 4297: 1998  Engineering design for earth buildings
NZS 4299: 1998  Earth buildings not requiring specific design
    Amend: 1
NZS 4303: 1990  Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality
NZS 4304: 1990  Health care waste management
NZS 4305: 1996  Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems
NZS 4332: 1997  Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts

AS/NZS 4401(Int): 1999 High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings

NZS 4402:-
    Part 2: Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes
    Test 2.2: 1986 Determination of the liquid limit
    Test 2.6: 1986 Determination of the linear shrinkage
    Part 4: Soil compaction tests
    Test 4.2.3: 1988 Related densities

NZS 4431: 1989  Code of practice for earth fill for residential development
    Amend: 1

NZS 4442: 1988  Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas
NZS 4452: 1986  Code of practice for the construction of underground pipe sewers and drains
    Amend: 1
NZS 4503: 1993  The distribution, installation and maintenance of hand operated fire fighting equipment for use in buildings

NZS/BS 4504:-
    Part 3: Circular flanges for pipes, valves and fittings (PN designated)
    Section 3.2: 1989 Specification for cast iron flanges

NZS 4510: 1998  Fire hydrant systems for buildings
NZS 4512: 2003  Fire alarm systems in buildings
NZS 4515: 2003  Fire sprinkler systems for residential occupancies

AS/NZS 4534: 1998 Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire

Where quoted
B1/VM1, B2/AS1
B1/AS1, B2/AS1
G4/AS1
G15/AS1
H1/AS1
D2/AS1, F6/AS1, HB/SS 8
G13/AS1
B1/VM1
B1/Defs
B1/Defs
B1/VM4
B1/VM1
E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
G14/VM1
B1/AS1, E1/AS1
C/AS1
G10/AS1, G14/VM1
C/AS1, HB/SS 6
C/AS1, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1
C/AS1, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1
E2/AS1
NZS 4541: 2003  Automatic fire sprinkler systems
AS/NZS 4600: 1996  Cold-formed steel structures
NZS 4602: 1988  Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters
  Amend: 1
NZS 4603: 1985  Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems)
  Amend: 1
NZS 4606:-  Storage water heaters
  Part 1: 1989  General requirements
    Amend: 1, 2, 3
  Part 2: 1989  Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells
    Amend: A
  Part 3: 1992  Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells
    Amend: A
NZS 4607: 1989  Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems
NZS 4608: 1992  Control valves for hot water systems
NZS 4613: 1986  Domestic solar water heaters
NZS 4617: 1989  Tempering (3-port mixing) valves
AS/NZS 4680: 1999  Hot-dip galvanized (zinc) coatings on fabricated ferrous articles
AS/NZS 4858: 2004  Wet area membranes
NZS/BS 5252: 1976  Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes
  Amend: 1
NZS 5261: 1996  The installation of gas burning appliances and equipment
NZS 5261: 2003  Gas installation
  Amend: 1
NZS 5433: 1988  Code of practice for transportation of hazardous substances on land
NZS/BS 5500: 1991  Specification for unfired fusion welded pressure vessels

Where quoted
  C/AS1, F7/AS1
  HB/SS 1
  B1/VM1
  G12/AS1
  G12/AS1
NZS/BS 5556: 1978 Specification for general requirements for dimensions and pressure ratings for pipe of thermoplastics materials (metric series)

NZS 5807:- Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding
   Part 2: 1980 Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts
   Amend: 1, 2

NZS 6104: 1981 Specification for emergency electricity supply in buildings

NZS 6214: 1988 Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)

NZS 6335: 1993 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances. Particular requirements for instantaneous water heaters
   Amend: 1, 2

NZS 6401: 1973 Specification for PVC-insulated cables for electric power and lighting

NZS 6703: 1984 Code of practice for interior lighting design

NZS 6742: 1971 Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings

NZS/BS 6920:- Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water
   Part 1: 1990 Specification
   Part 2: 1990 Methods of tests
   Part 3: 1990 High temperature tests

NZS 7401: 1985 Specification for solid fuel burning domestic appliances
   Amend: 1

NZS 7421: 1990 Specification for installation of solid fuel burning domestic appliances

NZS 7601: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services

NZS 7602: 1977 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services
   Amend: 1

Where quoted

G10/AS1
G12/AS1
C/AS1, F6/AS1
HB/SS 4, SS 14
G12/AS1
G12/AS1
F6/VM1, G7/AS1/VM1, G8/VM1
F6/AS1, F8/AS1, HB/SS 4
G12/AS1
G12/AS1
G12/AS1
B1/AS3
B1/AS3
G12/AS1, G14/VM1
G14/VM1
G12/AS1
NZS 7604: 1981 Specification for high density polyethylene drain and sewer pipe and fittings

NZS 7609:- Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) pipes and fittings for pressure applications

Part 1: 1990 Pipes
   Amend: A

Part 2: 1990 Solvent cement fittings
   Amend: A

NZS 7610: 1991 Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water
   Amend: 1, 2, A

NZS 7641: 1978 Specification for unplasticized PVC waste and ventilating pipe, fittings and accessories
   32 mm, 40 mm and 50 mm
   Amend: A, 1, 1A, 2, 2A

NZS 7642: 1971 Specification for unplasticized PVC soil and ventilating pipe, fittings and accessories
   Amend: A

NZS 7643: 1979 Code of practice for the installation of unplasticized PVC pipe systems
   Amend: 1

NZS 7646: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation

NZS 7648: 1987 Unplasticized PVC pipe and fittings for pressure applications

NZS 7649: 1988 Unplasticized PVC sewer and drain pipe and fittings

NZS 7652: 1976 Specification for plastics waste traps

Where quoted

E1/AS1, G14/VM1

E1/AS1, G14/VM1

E1/AS1, G14/VM1

G14/VM1

G12/AS1

G14/VM1

E1/AS1, G14/VM1

B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2/AS3, G14/VM1

G10/AS1

G14/VM1

E1/AS1, G14/VM1

G14/VM1
## Standards Australia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS D26: 1972</td>
<td>Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1088.4: 1987</td>
<td>Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes</td>
<td>HB/SS 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1159: 1988</td>
<td>Polyethylene pipes for pressure applications</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1167:-</td>
<td>Welding and brazing – Filler metals</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1214: 1983</td>
<td>Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1229: 1989</td>
<td>Laundry troughs</td>
<td>G2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1254: 1991</td>
<td>Unplasticised PVC (uPVC) pipes and fittings for storm and surface water applications</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1273: 1991</td>
<td>Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1357:-</td>
<td>Water valves for use with unvented water heaters</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1993</td>
<td>Protection valves Amend: 1</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1998</td>
<td>Control valves</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1366:-</td>
<td>Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1397: 2001</td>
<td>Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dip zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1432: 1990</td>
<td>Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1460:-</td>
<td>Fittings for use with polyethylene pipes</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>Mechanical jointing fittings</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1989</td>
<td>Electrofusion fittings</td>
<td>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Publications Referenced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1530:-</td>
<td>Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures</td>
<td>C/AS1, F3/Def</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1994</td>
<td>Combustibility test for materials</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1993</td>
<td>Test for flammability of materials</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4: 1997</td>
<td>Fire-resistance tests of elements of building construction</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1566: 1997</td>
<td>Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products</td>
<td>G13/AS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1579: 1993</td>
<td>Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water</td>
<td>G13/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1589: 1994</td>
<td>Copper and copper alloy waste fittings</td>
<td>G13/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1668:-</td>
<td>The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings</td>
<td>G4/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2002</td>
<td>Ventilation design for indoor-air containment control</td>
<td>G4/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1670:-</td>
<td>Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 6: 1997</td>
<td>– System design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1691: 1985</td>
<td>Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1727: 1975</td>
<td>Tank containers (international sizes)</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1734: 1997</td>
<td>Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1741: 1991</td>
<td>Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1768: 1991</td>
<td>Lightning protection (incorporating Amdt 1)</td>
<td>F3/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1804: 1976</td>
<td>Soft lead sheet and strip</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1851: 2005</td>
<td>Maintenance of fire protection equipment</td>
<td>HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15, G13/AS2/AS3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2032: 1997</td>
<td>Installation of uPVC pipe systems</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2049: 2002</td>
<td>Roof tiles</td>
<td>E2/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2050: 2002</td>
<td>Installation of roof tiles</td>
<td>B1/VM4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2159: 1995</td>
<td>Rules for the design and installation of piling</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2220:-</td>
<td>Emergency warning and intercommunication systems in buildings</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>Equipment design and manufacture</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1989</td>
<td>System design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2280: 1991</td>
<td>Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2845:-</td>
<td>Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention devices</td>
<td>G12/AS1, HB/SS 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2887:</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Plastic waste fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2890:</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Off-street parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1:</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Car parking facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2:</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Commercial vehicle facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>insulated for working voltages up to and including 0.6/1kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3518:</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) pipes and fittings for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1:</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>pressure applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2:</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Corrosion resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3566</td>
<td></td>
<td>Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2:</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3571:</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Glass filament reinforced thermosetting plastics (GRP) pipes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Polyester based: Water supply, sewerage and drainage applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3588:</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Shower bases and shower modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3668:</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fittings and threaded end connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3706:</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Geotextiles – Methods of test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1:</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>properties and statistical analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3730</td>
<td></td>
<td>Guide to the properties of paints for buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786:</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Smoke alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4020:</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4046</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Methods of testing roof tiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 9:</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Determination of dynamic weather resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4072:</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1:</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>separating elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4085:</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Automatic sliding door assemblies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4178:</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Electromagnetic door holders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4139:</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4276:</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3.1:</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4290:</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Design and installation of revolving doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Where quoted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 10: 1962</td>
<td>Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSDD 175: 1988</td>
<td>Code of practice for the identification of potentially contaminated land and its investigation</td>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 437: 1978</td>
<td>Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings</td>
<td>G13/AS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 585:-</td>
<td>Wood stairs</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>Specification for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 988: 1997</td>
<td>Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1470: 1987</td>
<td>Specification for wrought aluminium and aluminium alloys for general engineering purposes: plate, sheet and strip</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1600: 1992</td>
<td>Specification for dimensions of steel pipe for the petroleum industry</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1640:-</td>
<td>Specification for steel butt-welding pipe fittings for the petroleum industry</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1968</td>
<td>Wrought carbon and ferritic alloy steel fittings. Metric units</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4: 1968</td>
<td>Wrought and cast austenitic chromium-nickel steel fittings. Metric units</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1723:-</td>
<td>Brazing</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1845: 1984</td>
<td>Specification for filler metals for brazing</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 1965:-</td>
<td>Specification for butt-welding pipe fittings for pressure purposes</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1963</td>
<td>Carbon steel</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2594: 1975</td>
<td>Specification for carbon steel welded horizontal cylindrical storage tanks</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2598:-</td>
<td>Glass plant, pipeline and fittings</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for properties of borosilicate glass 3.3</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for testing, handling and use</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for pipeline and fittings of nominal bore 15 to 150 mm: compatibility and interchangeability</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for glass plant components</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS Number</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2640: 1982</td>
<td>Specification for Class II oxy-acetylene welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2870: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for rolled copper and copper alloys: sheet, strip and foil</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 3799: 1974 (1994)</td>
<td>Specification for steel pipe fittings, screwed and socket-welding for the petroleum industry</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4741: 1971</td>
<td>Specification for vertical cylindrical welded steel storage tanks for low-temperature service: single wall tanks for temperatures down to ~50°C</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4790: 1996</td>
<td>Method for determination of the effects of a small source of ignition on textile floor coverings (hot metal nut method)</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4991: 1974</td>
<td>Specification for propylene copolymer pressure pipe</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4994: 1987</td>
<td>Specification for design and construction of vessels and tanks in reinforced plastics</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5287: 1996</td>
<td>Specification for assessment and labelling of textile floor coverings tested to BS 4790</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5378:- Part 1: 1980</td>
<td>Safety signs and colours Specification for colour and design</td>
<td>F8/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5395:- Part 2: 1984</td>
<td>Stairs, ladders and walkways Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5446:- Part 1: 1990</td>
<td>Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5572: 1978</td>
<td>Code of practice for sanitary pipework</td>
<td>G13/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6037:- Part 1: 2003</td>
<td>Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6037:- Part 2: 2004</td>
<td>Suspended access equipment Travelling ladders and gantries</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6283:- Part 1: 1991</td>
<td>Safety devices for use with hot water systems Specification for expansion valves for pressures up to and including 10 bar</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6283:- Part 3: 1991</td>
<td>Specification for combined temperature and pressure relief valves for pressures up to and including 10 bar</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6283:- Part 4: 1991</td>
<td>Specification for drop-tight pressure reducing valves of nominal size up to and including DN 54 for supply for pressures up to and including 12 bar</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6374:-</td>
<td>Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1985</td>
<td>Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1984</td>
<td>Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1984</td>
<td>Specification for lining with stoved thermosetting resins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4: 1984</td>
<td>Specification for lining with cold curing thermosetting resins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 5: 1985</td>
<td>Specification for lining with rubbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6464: 1984</td>
<td>Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6538: 1987</td>
<td>Air permeance of paper and board</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1987</td>
<td>Method for determination of air permeance using the Garley apparatus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6561: 1985</td>
<td>Specification for zinc alloy sheet and strip for building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6925: 1988</td>
<td>Specification for mastic asphalt for building and civil engineering (limestone aggregate)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 7159: 1989</td>
<td>Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 8004: 1986</td>
<td>Code of practice for foundations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where quoted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1/VM4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## New Zealand Publications

**Building Research Association of New Zealand**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman</td>
<td>G3/AS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Government Departments and Agencies**

**Department of Labour**

Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992 | F1/VM1, G4/VM1 |

**Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries**

MO 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual | G3/AS1 |

**Ministry of Economic Development**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZECP 34: 2001</td>
<td>Electrical safety distances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZECP 36: 1993</td>
<td>Harmonic levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZECP 51: 2004</td>
<td>Homeowner/occupier’s electrical wiring work in domestic installations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZECP 54: 2001</td>
<td>Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ministry of Transport
Power Lift Rules: 1989
Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

New Zealand Forest Research Institute
Measurement of moisture content of assembled timber framing: 1993

New Zealand Meteorological Service
Average degree-day tables – selected NZ stations. (Miscellaneous publication 159, 1978)

COMMENT:
This publication is no longer available, but the relevant information is summarised in the Degree-days data sheets of the BRANZ ALF Manual.

Transit NZ
Bridge manual: Design and evaluation: 1994
Amend: 1

New Zealand Legislation
Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987
Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 1992
Gas Regulations 1993
Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001
Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001
Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004
Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001
Health & Safety in Employment Act 1992
Resource Management Act 1991

New Zealand Geomechanics Society
Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering use. Nov 1988
New Zealand Concrete Masonry Manual: 1999 Cement and Concrete Association of New Zealand
New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2003 New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc

Where quoted
D2/AS2, HB/SS 8
D2/AS2, HB/SS 8
E2/AS1
H1/Defs
B1/VM1
F4/AS1
C/AS1
G12/AS1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
F3/VM1
HB/SS 9
E1/VM1
B1/VM1
E2/AS1
E2/AS1
Australian Publications

Building Control Commission, State of Victoria, Australia
Smoke management in large spaces in buildings: 1998
Milke and Klotte

Australia/NZ Publications

Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council
Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992

British Publications

Building Research Establishment (UK)
BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989
External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation:
Horizontal fire barriers

BRE Report 135: 1988

BRE Report 186: 1990
Design principles for smoke ventilation in enclosed shopping centres. Morgan and Gardner

BRE Report 258: 1992
Design approaches for smoke control in atrium buildings. Hansell and Morgan

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London
CIBSE Code Series A: 1996
Air distribution systems

Where quoted

C/AS1
F1/VM1

112
International Publications

EIFS Industry Members Association
EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.

The European Committee for Standardisation
EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts
  Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts
  Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts
EN 115: 1983 Safety rules for the construction of escalators and passenger conveyors
EN 12380: 1999 Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods
  Eurocode 1: Basis of design actions on structures
    Part 2.2: Actions on structures exposed to fire

International Standards Organisation, Geneva
ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148: Acceptance criteria for flashing materials
ISO 140/VII: 1978 Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors
ISO 834: 1975 Fire resistance tests – elements of building construction
ISO 3008: 1976 Fire resistance tests – door and shutter assemblies
ISO 3009: 1976 Fire resistance tests – glazed elements
ISO 9223: 1992 Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification
ISO 11600: 2002 Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants

Underwriters Laboratories Inc
UL 217: 1997 Single and multiple station smoke alarms

Underwriters’ Laboratories of Canada
CAN/ULC S531: 1995 Smoke alarms

Where quoted
E2/AS1
D2/AS1, HB/SS 8
D2/AS1, HB/SS 8
D2/AS3, HB/SS 8
G13/AS1
C/AS1
E2/AS1
G6/VM1
C/AS1
C/AS1
E2/AS1
E2/AS1
E2/AS1
F7/AS1
F7/AS1
World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation

Environment Health Criteria 70

"Environment health criteria" for various chemicals
Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants, Technical report series 776
Geneva: 1989

IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer
Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food,
Geneva: 1987

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
United States of America Publications

American Iron and Steel Institute
Fire-safe structural steel – a design guide: 1983

American National Standards Institute and
American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989 Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings, Class 25, 125, 250 and 800
ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985 Malleable-iron threaded fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988 Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel alloy and other special alloys
ANSI/ASME B31.3: 1990 Chemical plant and petroleum refinery piping
ANSI B2.1: 1968 Screwing and socketing
ANSI B16.11: 1980 Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded
ASME Boiler and pressure vessel code-VIII pressure vessels

American Petroleum Institute
API SPEC 5L: 1991 Specification for line pipe
API STD 620: 1990 Design and construction of large, welded, low-pressure storage tanks
API STD 650: 1988 Welded steel tanks for oil storage
API STD 1104: 1988 Welding of pipelines and related facilities

American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
Design of smoke management systems. Klote and Milke 1992

American Society of Sanitary Engineers
ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing DWV systems stack type devices
ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing drainage systems

American Society for Testing and Materials
ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped, zinc-coated welded and seamless

Where quoted

C/AS1

G10/AS1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

G14/VM1

G14/VM1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

C/AS1

G13/AS1

G13/AS1

G10/AS1, G14/VM1
Where quoted

G10/AS1

E3/AS1

B1/VM4

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

E2/AS1

G6/VM1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1


International Conference of Building Officials, America

Proscenium fire safety curtains

Test method for the evaluation of thermal barriers

National Fire Protection Association of America

NFPA 92B: 1995 Guide for smoke management systems in malls, atria and large areas

NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus

United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste


Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold applied single component for caulking, sealing, and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas, decks, pavements, and other structures)


United States Public Health Service

Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with the US Environmental Protection Agency

Miscellaneous Publication

### Definitions

Many of the definitions in this section come from the Building Act 2004, regulations, including the Building Code, and Compliance Documents. Although every effort has been made to ensure definitions are accurate at the time of publication, it is possible that definitions may become out of date as changes occur to the legislation and Compliance Documents. In the event there is any discrepancy between the definitions in this section and the definitions in the legislation or Compliance Documents, the definitions in the legislation and Compliance Documents will prevail.

Note that some legislation and Compliance Documents may contain different definitions for the terms listed below. When using particular legislation or a Compliance Document, reference should be made to the definitions provided in that document.

#### Source Key:

- **BA04**: Building Act 2004
- **BR1**: Building Regulations 1992
- **BR2**: Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005
- **Code**: New Zealand Building Code
- **EA**: Electricity Act 1992
- **FSA**: Fire Service Act 1975
- **HB**: Handbook
- **HSNOA**: Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
- **LGA**: Local Government Act 1974 or 2002
- **PGDA**: Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976
- **RA**: Railway Act 2005
- **RMA**: Resource Management Act 1991
- **CD-(Code clause)**: Compliance Document for given Code clause (eg, CD-G13)
- **DG**: Building Consent Authority Development Guide

#### Definition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abutment</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The part of the valley side against which the dam is constructed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptable risk</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The level of risk the public is prepared to accept without further management. The risk is the combination of the probability and the consequence of a specified hazardous event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceptable Solution</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means a solution that must be accepted as complying with the Building Code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access chamber</td>
<td>CD-E1, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A chamber with working space at drain level through which the drain passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an inspection point.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access point</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A place where access may be made to a drain or discharge pipe for inspection, cleaning or maintenance; and may include a cleaning eye, inspection point, rodding point, inspection chamber or access chamber.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access route</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A continuous route that permits people and goods to move between the apron or construction edge of the building to spaces within a building, and between spaces within a building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Accessible** Having features to permit use by **people with disabilities**.

**Accessible route** An access route usable by **people with disabilities**. It shall be a continuous route that can be negotiated unaided by a wheelchair user. The route shall extend from street boundary or car parking area to those spaces within the **building** required to be accessible to enable **people with disabilities** to carry out normal activities and processes within the **building**.

**Accessible stairway** A stairway having features for use by a person with a **disability**. **Buildings** required to be accessible shall have at least one accessible stairway leading off an accessible route whether or not a lift is provided.

**Accreditation certificate** means a certificate that was issued by the Building Industry Authority under the Building Act 1991.

**COMMENT:**
Accreditation certificates have become product certificates under the Building Act 2004 and are subject to the product certification scheme under the Building Act 2004.

**Active conductor** Any conductor in which the electrical potential differs from that of a neutral conductor or earth.

**Adequate** means Adequate to achieve the objectives of the **Building Code**.

**Adjacent building** A nearby building, including an adjoining building, whether or not erected on **other property**.

**Air gap** The vertical distance through air between the lowest point of the water supply outlet and the **flood level rim** of the equipment or the **fixture** into which the outlet discharges.

**Air admittance valve** A valve that allows air to enter but not to escape in order to limit pressure fluctuations within the sanitary plumbing or drainage system.

**Air seal** A continuous seal fitted between a window or door reveal and the surrounding wall framing to prevent the flow of air into the interior of the **building**.

**Allotment** has the meaning given to it by section 10 of the **Building Act 2004**.

Section 10 states:
“(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, **allotment** means a parcel of land—
(a) that is a continuous area of land; and
(b) whose boundaries are shown on a survey plan, whether or not as a subdivision—
(i) approved by way of a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991; or
(ii) allowed or granted under any other Act; and
(c) that is—
(i) subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952 and comprised in 1 certificate of title or for which 1 certificate of title could be issued under that Act; or

**Source**
- Code
- HB
- CD-C
- CD-F8
- Code
- Code
- CD-G12
- CD-G13
- CD-E2
- BA04
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alter in relation to a building, includes to rebuild, re-erect, repair, enlarge and extend the building.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative solution means a solution that is compliant with the Building Code but is not part of the Compliance Document.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amenity means an attribute of a building which contributes to the health, physical independence, and well being of the building’s users but which is not associated with disease or a specific illness.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-ponding board A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay roof tiles and supports the roof underlay. The board is sloped to ensure moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliance hearth A layer of non-combustible material under or near an appliance. It may be either part of the building structure or an overlay on a combustible floor.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appurtenant structure, in relation to a dam, means a structure that is integral to the proper functioning of the dam.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apron flashing A near flat or sloping flashing with a vertical upstand, used at junctions between roofs and walls.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asbestos as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means: (a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or (b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph a) of this definition; or (c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or (d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.</td>
<td>CD-F2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:

(a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or
(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
(d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a);
**Atmospheric burner**  A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspiring effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance.

**Authority**  means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991.

**Comment:**
The Authority was dissolved under the Building Act 2004 and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.

---

**Backflow**  A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the flow caused by back-pressure and includes back-siphonage.

**Backflow prevention device**  A device that prevents backflow.

**Back-pressure**  A backflow condition caused by the downstream pressure becoming greater than the supply pressure.

**Back-siphonage**  Backflow condition caused by the supply pressure becoming less than the downstream pressure.

**Baluster**  A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.

**Balustrade**  The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and top rail).

**Basement**  Any firecell or part of a firecell below the level of the lowest final exit.

**Comment:**
Because fire safety precautions are increased with increases in escape height, the precautions for basements increase with basement depth. Thus a single floor building with one basement level is treated as a two floor building, a single floor building with three basement levels as a four floor building and the requirements of C/AS1 Table 4.1 shall be applied downwards as opposed to upwards for levels above ground.

---

**Base metal thickness (BMT)**  The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.

**Bird’s beak**  A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal flashing to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the cladding system below. Refer also Kick-out and Drip edge.

**Comment:**
A bird’s beak is used at the bottom of a capping to deflect water away from the enclosed balustrade cladding.

---

**Boundary**  means any boundary which is shown on a survey plan approved by the Chief Surveyor and which is deposited in the Titles Office whether or not a new title has been issued.

**Boundary joist**  A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists.

**Branch discharge pipe**  A discharge pipe that serves one or more fixture discharge pipes for any one floor.
Branch vent pipe: A vent pipe that serves two or more fixture vent pipes.

Building: has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004.

Section 8 states:

"8 Building: what it means and includes:

(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, building—
(a) means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure
   (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and
(b) includes—
   (i) a mechanical, electrical, or other system; and
   (ii) a fence as defined in section 2 of the Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987; and
   (iii) a vehicle or motor vehicle (including a vehicle or motor vehicle as defined in section
   (iv) a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on, or forms part of, a building and that is more than 7 m in height above the point of its attachment or base support (except a dish aerial that is less than 2 m wide); and
(c) includes any 2 or more buildings that, on completion of building work, are intended to be managed as one building with a common use and a common set of ownership arrangements; and
(d) includes the non-moving parts of a cable car attached to or servicing a building; and
(e) after 30 March 2008, includes the moving parts of a cable car attached to or servicing a building

(2) Subsection (1)(b)(i) only applies if—
(a) the mechanical, electrical, or other system is attached to the structure referred to in subsection (1)(a); and
(b) the system—
   (i) is required by the Building Code; or
   (ii) if installed, is required to comply with the Building Code.

(3) Subsection (1)(c) only applies in relation to—
(a) subpart 2 of Part 2; and
(b) a building consent; and
(c) a code compliance certificate; and
(d) a compliance schedule.

(4) This section is subject to section 9."
Section 9 states:

**9 Building: what it does not include**

In this Act, **building** does not include—

(a) a NUO system, or part of a NUO system, that—
   (i) is external to the building; and
   (ii) is connected to, or is intended to be connected to, the building
       to provide for the successful functioning of the NUO system in
       accordance with the system’s intended design and purpose; and
   (iii) is not a mast pole or a telecommunication aerial that is on,
        or forms part of, a building; or
(b) cranes (including any cranes as defined in regulations made
    under the Health and Safety in Employment Act 1992); or
(c) any of the following, whether or not incorporated within another
    structure:
    (i) ski tows;
    (ii) other similar stand-alone machinery systems; or
(d) any description of vessel, boat, ferry, or craft used in navigation—
    (i) whether or not it has a means of propulsion; and
    (ii) regardless of what that means of propulsion is; or
(e) aircraft (including any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere
    from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the
    air against the surface of the earth); or
(f) any offshore installation (as defined in section 222 of the Maritime
    Transport Act 1994) to be used for petroleum mining; or
(g) containers as defined in section 2(1) of the Hazardous Substances
    and New Organisms Act 1996; or
(h) magazines as defined in section 222 of the Hazardous Substances
    and New Organisms Act 1996; or
(i) scaffolding used in the course of the construction process; or
(j) falsework.

**Building Act 2004** (the Building Act) means the principal legislation dealing with building controls in New Zealand.

**COMMENT:**
The **Building Act** applies to the construction, alteration, and demolition of new and existing buildings throughout New Zealand.

**Building certifier** means a **person approved as a building certifier by the Authority under the former Act**.

**COMMENT:**
**Building certifiers** are not provided for under the **Building Act 2004**. There are no longer any **building certifiers**.
**Building Code** means the regulations made under section 400 of the Building Act 2004.

**COMMENT:**
No regulations have yet been made under section 400 of the Building Act 2004. However, the **Building Code** is currently the First Schedule of the Building Regulations 1992, which continue in force under regulation 8(2) of the Building Forms (Regulations) 2004.

**Building consent** means a consent to carry out **building work** granted by a **building consent authority** under section 49 of the Building Act 2004.

**Building consent accreditation body** means the person referred to in section 248(2) of the Building Act 2004.

**Building consent authority (BCA)** means a person whose name is entered in the register referred to in section 273(1)(a) of the Building Act 2004.

**Building element** Any structural and non-structural component and assembly incorporated into or associated with a building. Included are fixtures, services, drains, permanent mechanical installations for access, glazing, partitions, ceilings and temporary supports.

**Building height** The vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest final exit from the building; and the highest occupied floor level containing or supporting any purpose group other than IE, IA or ID, or penthouses used to enclose stairways, liftshafts or machinery rooms located on or within the roof.


**Building method or product** has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the Building Act 2004. Section 20(2)(c) states:

“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”

**Building performance index (BPI)** in relation to a building, means the energy from a network utility operator or a depletable resource (measured in kilowatt-hours per square metre of floor area and per degree-day, and calculated using the Building Research Association of New Zealand’s Annual Loss Factor Design Manual 1990 or some other method that can be correlated with that manual) needed to maintain the building at a constant internal temperature for the period from 1 May to the close of 31 August under the following standard conditions:

(a) A continuous temperature of 20°C throughout the building.
(b) An air change rate of 1 change per hour or the actual air leakage rate, whichever is the greater.
(c) A heat emission contribution arising from internal heat sources for the period being considered of 1000 kWh for the first 50 m² of floor area and 10 kWh for every additional square metre of floor area.
(d) No allowance for:
   (i) carpets, or
   (ii) blinds, curtains, or drapes, on windows.
(e) Windows to have a shading coefficient of 0.6 (made up of 0.8 for windows and recesses and 0.75 for site shading).
Definition

Building work— BA04
(a) means work—
   (i) for, or in connection with, the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and
   (ii) on an allotment that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing building on that allotment complies with the Building Code; and
(b) includes sitework; and
(c) includes design work (relating to building work) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be restricted building work for the purposes of this Act; and
(d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of ”supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be building work for the purposes of Part 4.

Building warrant of fitness (BWoF) means the warrant of fitness an owner of a building must supply to a territorial authority under section 108 of the Building Act 2004.

Building wrap A building paper, synthetic wrap or sheathing used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building.

Butt flashing A preformed wall flashing, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall cladding. A butt flashing is shaped to underflash the cladding, with the cladding butting against the exposed box portion of the flashing.

C

Cable car— BA04
(a) means a vehicle—
   (i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and
   (ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a building;
And
   (iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but
(b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a building.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cantilevered deck</strong> A deck where no support is provided at the outer</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extremities of the deck.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantilevered decks are often constructed by extending framing members</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through the cladding beyond the building face. Cantilevered decks are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes known as balconies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capping</strong> A flashing formed to cover the top of an enclosed balustrade</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or parapet. Also known as a coping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity barrier</strong> A construction provided to close openings within a</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concealed space against the passage of fire, or to restrict the spread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fire within such spaces.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity batten</strong> A vertical packing member used to create a drained</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavity as part of a cladding system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity spacer</strong> A short block used to provide intermittent support</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for fixings or pipe penetrations through a drained cavity, while not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupting drainage within the cavity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A cavity spacer is required to be set to a slight fall (5° minimum from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horizontal) to allow drainage of any moisture from the top.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity wall</strong> A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drained cavity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate of acceptance</strong> means a certificate issued under section</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate for public use</strong> means a certificate issued under section</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change the use</strong> for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the</td>
<td>BR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Act 2004, change the use, in relation to a building, means to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part of the building from one use (the old use) to another (the new use)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the Building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the requirements for compliance with the Building Code in relation to the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old use.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Check valve (or non-return valve)</strong> A valve that permits flow in one</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a backflow prevention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney</strong> A non-combustible structure which encloses one or more flues,</td>
<td>CD-B1,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireplaces or other heating appliances.</td>
<td>CD-C,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney back</strong> The non-combustible wall forming the back of a</td>
<td>CD-B1,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireplace.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney base</strong> That part of a chimney which houses the fireplace.</td>
<td>CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney breast</strong> The front fireplace wall construction above the</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireplace opening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney jambs</strong> The side walls of a fireplace.</td>
<td>CD-B1,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding</strong> The exterior weather-resistant surface of a building.</td>
<td>CD-C,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Includes any supporting substrate and, if applicable, surface treatment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding system</strong> The weatherproof enclosure of a building, including building wraps, claddings and their fixings, windows, doors and all penetrations, flashings, seals, joints and junctions. Where required by E2/AS1, the cladding system shall include a drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Classified use</strong> means a classified use listed in clause A1 of the Building Code.</td>
<td>BR1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleaning eye</strong> A small diameter access point usually formed as part of a fitting or trap.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Code compliance certificate</strong> means a certificate issued by a building consent authority under section 95 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combined waste pipe</strong> A discharge pipe which serves two or more waste pipes.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combustible</strong> See non-combustible.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combustion appliance</strong> A slow combustion stove, a free standing metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot belly stove, an oil burning space heater, or a vented gas burning heater.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common ramp</strong> A ramp which is used, intended to be used by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a service ramp or accessible ramp.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common stairway</strong> A stairway which is used, intended to be used, by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a private stairway, service stairway or accessible stairway.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance document</strong> has the meaning given to it by section 22 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 22 states:

(1) The chief executive may, by notice in the Gazette, issue a document for use in establishing compliance with the Building Code (a Compliance Document).
(2) A person who complies with a Compliance Document must, for the purposes of this Act, be treated as having complied with the provisions of the Building Code to which the document relates.
(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any regulations referred to in section 20”.

**Compliance schedule** means a compliance schedule required under section 100 of the Building Act 2004.

**Compliance schedule statement** means a statement issued by a territorial or regional authority referred to in section 105(e) of the Building Act 2004.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concealed space</strong> Any part of the space within a <em>building</em> that cannot be seen from an <em>occupied space</em>.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> This term includes any ceiling space, roof space, space under a raised floor (such as computer rooms, floors, or stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered floor, “left-over spaces” created when some structural element or the like has been covered in; small service or duct spaces within the volume of a <em>firecell</em> and the like, but not a <em>protected shaft</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Constant pressure</strong> means subjected to the sustained force of fluid forming the reservoir. When there is no water in a reservoir, there is no pressure. When a reservoir is partially filled, there is a constant pressure – in terms of it being a pressure sustained in time.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Construct</strong> in relation to a <em>building</em>, includes to design, build, erect, prefabricate, and relocate the <em>building</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contaminant</strong> includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and microorganisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat.</td>
<td>RMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) When discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) When discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Controlled area</strong> That area where the use of radioactive material or an irradiating apparatus may, in the opinion of the <em>licensee</em>, present a hazard to <em>persons</em> within that area.</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Control joint</strong> A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <em>Expansion joint</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cool location</strong> means a location in New Zealand where the <em>degree-day total</em> is 920 or more.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cross connection</strong> Any actual or potential connection between a <em>potable water</em> supply and a source of contamination.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D

**Dam**

(a) means an artificial barrier, and its appurtenant structures, that—

(i) is constructed to hold back water or other fluid under constant pressure so as to form a reservoir; and

(ii) is used for the storage, control, or diversion of water or other fluid; and

(iii) retains 3 or more metres depth, and holds 20,000 or more cubic metres volume, of water or other fluid; and
## Definition

### (b) includes—

- (i) a flood control dam; and
- (ii) a natural feature that has been significantly modified to function as a dam; and
- (iii) a canal; but

### (c) does not include a stopbank designed to control floodwaters.

### COMMENT:

20,000 cubic metres is equivalent to six Olympic size swimming pools.

Note: An Olympic swimming pool size is 50 m long x 25 m wide x 2 m deep.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dam safety assurance programme</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepared by an owner of a dam under section 140 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order for dams to maintain their integrity ongoing monitoring, maintenance and repair is essential. For those dams classified as medium or high potential impact, dam owners have to prepare and submit a safety assurance programme to the regional authority on an annual basis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dam compliance certificate</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A certificate issued by the owner of a dam annually stating that all procedures in the dam safety assurance programme have been fully complied with during the previous 12 months.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damp-proof course (DPC)</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A narrow strip (generally up to 300 mm wide) of durable vapour barrier placed between building elements to prevent the passage of moisture from one element to another.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damp-proof membrane (DPM)</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A sheet material, coating or vapour barrier, having a low water vapour transmission, and used to prevent water and water vapour movement through concrete in contact with the ground. (Also known as a concrete underlay.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dangerous goods</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any materials included in the UN classification, classes 2-5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Hazardous substance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dangerous goods workroom</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A room reserved primarily for the use of dangerous goods of Class 3(a) or Class 3(b) (i.e. flammable liquids).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead end</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That part of an open path where escape is possible in only one direction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A dead end ceases to exist where the escape route reaches a point in the open path which offers alternative directions of travel, or at a final exit or an exitway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deck</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An open platform projecting from an exterior wall of a building and supported by framing. A deck may be over enclosed internal spaces, or may be open underneath.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refer also Enclosed deck. Also known as a balcony.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Degree-day</strong> in relation to any location on any day, –</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) If a base temperature of 15°C is greater than the mean of the maximum and minimum outdoor temperatures at that location on that day, means the number of degrees Celsius by which that base temperature is greater than that mean.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) If a base temperature of 15°C is not greater than the mean of the maximum and minimum outdoor temperatures at that location on that day, means zero.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Degree-day total</strong> in relation to any location, means the sum of the degree-days for that location for the period of 1 May to 31 August, as derived from Average Degree-day Tables – Selected NZ Stations (Miscellaneous Publication 159, 1978 of the New Zealand Meteorological Service).</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department</strong> means the Department of Building and Housing.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Determination</strong> means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Developed length</strong> The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diameter (or bore)</strong> The nominal internal diameter.</td>
<td>CD-G12, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Direct fixed</strong> A term used to describe a wall cladding attached directly to the wall framing, without the use of a drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge pipe</strong> Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack</strong> A discharge pipe that has one or more discharge pipe connections, and which is vented at one end via a discharge stack vent.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack vent</strong> A vent pipe connected to the top of the discharge stack.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge unit</strong> The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the plumbing system, and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Doorset</strong> A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dormer or dormer window</strong> A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drain</strong> A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey foul water or surface water to an outfall.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definition | Source
--- | ---
**Drained cavity** A cavity space, immediately behind a wall *cladding*, that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity. A *drained cavity* assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall *cladding system* to drain to the exterior of the *building*, and any remaining moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm *drained cavity*, the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.

**Drain vent pipe** Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the *drain* and *sewer*.

**Draught diverter** A device, without moving parts, fitted in the *flue* of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary *flue*.

**Drip edge** Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal *flashing* to deflect moisture away from the *cladding system* below. Refer also *Bird’s beak* and *Kick-out*.

**Durable** Resistant to wear and decay.

**Dwang** A short horizontal member fixed between vertical *framing* timbers. Also known as nogging.

**Early childhood centre** A facility used for the education or care of children under the age of six, and required to be licensed under the Education (Early Childhood Centres) Regulations 1998.

**Eaves** That part of the roof *construction*, including *cladding*, fascia and gutter, that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall.

**EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System)** A polystyrene sheet-based *cladding system* that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating.

**Electrical fixed appliance** An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the *electrical installation*, or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the *building*.

**Electrical installation** Any *electrical fixed appliances* and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the *building*.

**Electrical supply system** The source of electricity external to the *electrical installation*.

**Electrolytic corrosion** Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present.

**Enclosed balustrade** A timber-framed barrier with *cladding* across all exposed faces.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enclosed deck</strong> A <em>deck</em>, whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Energy work</strong> means—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) gasfitting; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) prescribed electrical work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Energy work certificate</strong> means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Envelope complexity</strong> The categorisation of the complexity of the total <em>building</em> envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the <em>building</em> as specified in E2/AS1.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer)</strong> A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof <em>membrane</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escape height</strong> The height between the floor level in the <em>firecell</em> being considered and the floor level of the required <em>final exit</em> which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that <em>firecell</em>.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. It is necessary only to use the greatest height to the exits required for the <em>firecell</em> being considered, even though the <em>building</em> may have other <em>final exits</em> at lower or higher levels.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Where the <em>firecell</em> contains <em>intermediate floors</em>, or upper floors within <em>household units</em> the <em>escape height</em> shall be measured from the floor having the greatest vertical separation from the <em>final exit</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escape route</strong> A continuous unobstructed route from any <em>occupied space</em> in a <em>building</em> to a <em>final exit</em> to enable occupants to reach a <em>safe place</em>, and shall comprise one or more of the following: <em>open paths</em>, <em>protected paths</em> and <em>safe paths</em>.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors are not obstructions in an <em>escape route</em> provided they comply with C/AS1 Part 3 and D1/AS1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Essential service</strong> In the context of an <em>electrical installation</em> means emergency lighting, firemen’s lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in <em>buildings</em>.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Estimated value</strong> in relation to <em>building work</em>, means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the <em>building work</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evacuation time</strong> The time taken by the occupants of the <em>building</em> to evacuate the <em>building</em> to a <em>final exit</em>.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exitway</strong> All parts of an <em>escape route</em> protected by <em>fire or smoke separations</em>, or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a <em>final exit</em>.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expansion joint</strong> A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <em>Control joint</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**

**External wall** Any exterior face of a building within 30° of vertical, consisting of primary and/or secondary elements intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain unprotected areas.

**COMMENT:** A roof is an external wall if within 30° of the vertical.

**Factor of safety** in relation to any building means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures.

**Falsework**, in relation to building work or the maintenance of a building.— (a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and (b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but (c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support.

**Final exit** The point at which an escape route terminates by giving direct access to a safe place.

**COMMENT:** Final exits are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a safe place. If a safe place can be reached only by passing down an alley or across a bridge, then the final exit is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. Final exits, therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of arrival, rather than as any particular element of a building. They are determined entirely by the definition of safe place.

**Finished ground level (FGL)** The level of the ground after all backfilling, landscaping and surface paving has been completed.

**Fire** The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these.

**Firecell** Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a building, which is enclosed by any combination of fire separations, external walls, roofs, and floors.

**COMMENT:** Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (e.g., when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between firecells are fire separations.
Definitions

**Firecell rating (F)** The fire resistance rating (FRR) intended to prevent fire spread to another firecell, for sufficient time to provide for safe evacuation of occupants and protection of adjacent housing units and sleeping areas in the building of fire origin and fire fighters engaged in fire fighting and rescue operations.

**COMMENT:**
1. The purpose of the firecell rating is to prevent premature collapse of elements of structure in order to protect:
   (a) The occupants, some of whom may have to remain in the building for some time while evacuation proceeds, particularly if the building is a large one.
   (b) Adjacent household units and sleeping areas in the building of fire origin.
   (c) Fire fighters engaged on rescue and fire fighting operations (although this is limited because property protection in the building of origin is not a matter covered by the New Zealand Building Code except as required by b) above).
2. The use of the F rating to determine the FRR of a primary or secondary element is discussed in C/AS1 Part 5.

**Fire damper** A device with a specified FRR complete with fixings and operating mechanism for automatically closing off an airway where it passes through a fire separation.

**COMMENT:**
An airway may be a duct, plenum, ceiling space, roof space or similar construction used for the passage of ventilating air.

**Fire door** A doorset, single or multi-leaf, having a specific fire resistance rating, and in certain situations a smoke control capability, and forming part of a fire separation. The door, in the event of fire, if not already closed, will close automatically and be self latching.

**COMMENT:**
Requirements for fire doors are given in C/AS1 Paragraphs 6.19.1 and 6.19.8 and Appendix C, Paragraph C 8.1.

**Fire hazard** means the danger of potential harm and degree of exposure arising from—
(a) the start and spread of fire; and
(b) the smoke and gases that are generated by the start and spread of fire.

**Fire hazard category (FHC)** The number (graded 1 to 4 in order of increasing severity), used to classify purpose groups or activities having a similar fire hazard, and where fully developed fires are likely to have similar impact on the structural stability of the building.

**COMMENT:**
Fire hazard categories are identified in C/AS1 Table 2.1.

**Fire intensity** The rate release of calorific energy in watts, determined either theoretically or empirically, as applicable.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fire load</strong> The sum of the net calorific values of the combustible contents which can reasonably be expected to burn within a firecell, including furnishings, built-in and removable materials, and building elements. The calorific values shall be determined at the ambient moisture content or humidity. (The unit of measurement is MJ.)</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fire load energy density (FLED)</strong> The total fire load divided by the firecell floor area. In this calculation the floor area shall include circulation and service spaces, but exclude exitways and protected shafts.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> The total fire load is converted to fire load energy terms in megajoules (MJ) for calculation of the FLED (MJ/m²).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fireplace</strong> A space formed by the chimney back, the chimney jambs, and the chimney breast in which fuel is burned for the purpose of heating the room into which it opens.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fire resistance rating (FRR)</strong> The term used to describe the minimum fire resistance required of primary and secondary elements as determined in the standard test for fire resistance, or in accordance with a specific calculation method verified by experimental data from standard fire resistance tests. It comprises three numbers giving the time in minutes for which each of the criteria stability, integrity and insulation are satisfied, and is presented always in that order.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **COMMENT:** 1. Examples of FRRs are:  
(a) 30/30/15 indicating stability 30 minutes, integrity 30 minutes, insulation 15 minutes.  
(b) 30/-/- indicating stability 30 minutes, but no time requirement for integrity or insulation.  
(c) -/15/15 indicating no time requirement for stability, but 15 minutes for integrity and insulation.  
(d) 60/30/x indicating stability of 60 minutes, integrity of 30 minutes, and a requirement for insulation from C/AS1 Paragraph 5.6.4.  
2. C/AS1 Part 5 gives more information on FRRs. |        |
| **Fire resisting closure** A fire rated device or assembly for closing an opening through a fire separation. It shall have a FRR of no less than that required for the fire separation. | Code   |
| **COMMENT:** A fire resisting closure is intended to include fire doors, fire windows or access panels. In this context the opening may be used to permit passage of people or goods, or to transmit light, but does not include an opening to permit the passage of building services. |        |
| **Fire resisting glazing** Fixed or openable glazing, complete with frame and fixings, mullions, transoms and glazing beads, with a specified FRR and complying with NZS 4232: Part 2. | CD-C   |
Definitions

**Definition**

**COMMENT:**

1. The requirement for fire resisting glazing will not be met by ordinary window glass, or safety glasses, but rather by wired glass, or by special fire resisting glass shown by test to perform adequately. The nature and design of the frames also have an effect on the performance of fire resisting glazing.

2. Openable glazing is required by NZS 4232 Part 2 to be fitted with an automatic device which, in the event of fire, will close and latch the window sash.

**Fire safety precautions (FSPs)** The combination of all methods used in a building to warn people of an emergency, provide for safe evacuation, and restrict the spread of fire, and includes both active and passive protection.

**COMMENT:**

This definition has the same meaning and wording as the definition of “fire safety systems” in the Building Regulations.

**Fire safety systems** The combination of all methods used in a building to warn people of an emergency, provide for safe evacuation, and restrict the spread of fire, and includes both active and passive protection.

**Fire separation** Any building element which separates firecells or firecells and safe paths, and provides a specific fire resistance rating.

**Fire shutter** A fire rated device, complete with fixings and operating mechanism, for automatically closing off an opening in a fire separation or protected shaft.

**Fire stop** A material or method of construction used to restrict the spread of fire within or through fire separations, and having a FRR no less than that of the fire separation.

**COMMENT:**

Fire stops are mainly used to seal around penetrations, but can also be used to seal narrow gaps between building elements.

**Fixture** An article intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of a building.

**Fixture discharge pipe** A discharge pipe that is used to convey waste from a single sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance to a branch discharge pipe, a discharge stack, or directly to a drain. It does not include any pipes forming part of a sanitary appliance.

**Fixture vent pipe (trap vent)** A vent pipe that is connected to a fixture discharge pipe or the sanitary fixture itself.

**Flame barrier** A material or system applied or installed to protect another building element from flame contact. The protection shall be effective for no less than 10 minutes exposure in the standard test for fire resistance.

**COMMENT:**

1. The principal use of flame barriers is to delay ignition of foamed plastics materials.

2. Refer to Appendix C Paragraph C10.1 of C/AS1 for details of the test requirements for flame barriers.
**Definition**

**Flame safeguard system** A system consisting of a flame detector(s) plus associated circuitry, integral components, valves and interlocks the function of which is to shut off the fuel supply to the burner(s) in the event of ignition failure or flame failure.

**Flammability index (FI)** That index number for flammability, which is determined according to the standard test method for flammability of thin flexible materials.

**Flashing** A component, formed from a rigid or flexible waterproof material, that drains or deflects water back outside the cladding system.

**Flexible flashing tape** A flexible self-adhesive waterproof tape. Usually used as an accessory for building wraps, to seal corners and intersections.

**Flood level rim** The top edge at which water can overflow from equipment or a fixture.

**Floor waste** An outlet located at the low point of a graded floor or in a level floor designed to receive accidental or intentional discharges.

**Floor waste pipe** A pipe that receives the discharge from a floor waste and that discharges outside the building or to the foul water drainage or sanitary plumbing system.

**Flue** The passage through which the products of combustion are conveyed to the outside

**Flue liner** Pipes or linings of fire clay, metal or fire brick, surrounding flues.

**Flue system** A series of interconnecting flue pipe casings which form a safe passage (flue) for conveying products of combustion from within an appliance to the outside of a building or structure.

**Flush-finished** The description of a cladding and joints system which relies on a protective coating applied to the face of the cladding to prevent the penetration of water.

**Foamed plastics** Combustible foamed plastic polymeric materials of low density (typically less than 100 kg/m³) and are classified as cellular polymers which are manufactured by creating a multitude of fine voids (typically 90 to 98%) distributed more or less uniformly throughout the product. Examples of foamed plastics are latex foams, polyethylene foams, polyvinyl chloride foams, expanded or extruded polystyrene foams, phenolic foams, ureaformaldehyde foams, polyurethane foams and polychloropene foams.

**COMMENT:**

1. Foamed plastics may be rigid or flexible, but rigid foams are the most common in building products. When burnt they tend to generate high levels of heat energy (kJ/kg) and varying quantities of smoke and other toxic gases depending on the nature and volume of the particular product.

2. Where doubt exists as to whether a building material is foamed plastics, an opinion should be sought from a person or organisation with appropriate skill and experience in fire engineering. That opinion should be included with the building consent application to the building consent authority.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forced or induced draught appliance</strong> An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Former Act</strong> means the Building Act 1991.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Foul water</strong> The discharge from any sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Foul water drainage system</strong> Drains, joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the plumbing system to an outfall.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Framing</strong> Timber members to which lining, cladding, flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Free outlet (push through)</strong> In the context of storage water heaters means a water heater with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functional requirements</strong> in relation to a building, means those functions which a building is to perform for the purposes of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### G

**Gantry** A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead.  

**Gasfitting** has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976.  

Section 2 states:

“(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller):

(b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—

(i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or

(ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container:

(c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—

but does not include—

(d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or

(e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or

(f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or

(g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply;”
**Definition**

**Gather** That part of a chimney where the transition from fireplace to stack occurs.

**Good ground** means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a factor of safety of 3.0), but excludes:

(a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,

(b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and

(c) Any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

**COMMENT:**

Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as good ground for building foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:

(a) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width.

(b) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.

Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.

**Grease trap** A device designed to intercept grease in a foul water discharge.

**Group sleeping area** A firecell containing communal sleeping accommodation for a specified number of people who may or may not be known to one another. Partial subdivision within the firecell is permitted with specific limitation including that no occupied space is fully enclosed and all occupied spaces are open and available to all occupants at any time. A group sleeping area firecell may include spaces for associated direct support functions, such as hygiene facilities and tea making (not cooking) activities, for use by the occupants. It does not include spaces, such as waiting rooms, lounges, dining rooms or kitchens, providing a communal service function for all occupants.

**COMMENT:**

1. Examples of group sleeping area firecells are dormitories, hospital wards, wharenui, backpacker hostels and ski lodges.

2. The maximum number of people permitted in a group sleeping area firecell, and the permitted form of subdivision, will depend on the ability of the occupants to react to the presence of fire and escape to a safe place.

**Gully trap** A fitting designed to prevent foul air escaping from the drainage system and used to receive the discharge from waste pipes.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>H</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Habitable space</strong> A space used for activities normally associated with domestic living, but excludes any bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, clothes-drying room, or other space of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Handrail</strong> A rail to provide support to, or assist with the movement of a person.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hazardous</strong> Creating an unreasonable risk to people of bodily injury or deterioration of health.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hazardous substance</strong> Has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 and section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996</td>
<td>Code/FSA/HSNOA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 2 of the Fire Service Act 1975 states:

"**Hazardous substance**" means
(a) Any hazardous substance as defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; and
(b) Any infectious or radioactive substance that may impair human, animal, or plant health:

Section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 states:

"**Hazardous substance**" means, unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations, any substance—
(a) With one or more of the following intrinsic properties:
   (i) Explosiveness:
   (ii) Flammability:
   (iii) A capacity to oxidise
   (iv) Corrosiveness:
   (v) Toxicity (including chronic toxicity
   (vi) Ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or
   (b) Which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any one or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a) of this definition."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Hearth</strong></th>
<th>CD-B1, CD-C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The insulating floor under the <em>fire</em> and in front and at the sides of the <em>fireplace</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Hem** | CD-E2 |
| A flat fold, not completely closed, applied to the edge of a metal *flashing*. |

| **Hidden gutter** | CD-E2 |
| A gutter located within the boundaries of the roof *framing*. Hidden gutters may also be known as secret gutters or internal gutters. See also Valley gutters. |

**COMMENT:**

*Hidden gutters* are distinct from gutters or spouting that are externally located beyond the bounds of the roof and wall *framing*. 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hoardering</strong> A structure alongside a public way providing side protection but no overhead protection.</td>
<td>CD-F5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold-open device</strong> A device which holds a <em>smoke control door</em> or <em>fire door</em> open during normal use, but is released by deactivating the device by an automatic <em>fire</em> detection system, allowing the door to close automatically under the action of a self-closing device.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F7, CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hook</strong> An open fold applied to the edge of a metal <em>flashing</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A <em>hook</em> is distinct from a <em>hem</em>, as it is open at an acute angle rather than flattened.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Household unit</strong> (a) means a <em>building</em> or group of <em>buildings</em>, or part of a <em>building</em> or group of <em>buildings</em>, that is—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) used, or intended to be used, only or mainly for residential purposes; and (ii) occupied, or intended to be occupied, exclusively as the home or residence of not more than 1 household; but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) does not include a hostel, boarding house, or other specialised accommodation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HVAC</strong> An abbreviation for heating, ventilating and airconditioning.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Illuminance</strong> The luminous flux falling onto a unit area of surface.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impervious</strong> That which does not allow the passage of moisture.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Independent qualified person (IQP)</strong> means a <em>person</em> accepted by a territorial <em>authority</em> in accordance with section 438 of the <em>Building Act</em> 2004 as being qualified to carry out the inspection, maintenance, and reporting procedures required for a <em>specified system</em> stated in a <em>compliance schedule</em>.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inspection chamber</strong> A chamber with working space at ground level through which the <em>drain</em> passes either as an open channel or as a pipe incorporating an <em>inspection point</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E1, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inspection point</strong> A removable cap at <em>drain</em> level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.</td>
<td>CD-E1, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Insulating material</strong> A material that has a thermal conductivity of less than 0.07 W/mK.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-E3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Insulation</strong> In the context of fire protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a fire separation, when subjected to the standard test for fire resistance, has limited the transmission of heat through the specimen.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Integrity</strong> In the context of fire protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a fire separation, when subjected to the standard test for fire resistance, has prevented the passage of flame or hot gases.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> The precise meaning of integrity depends on the type of building elements being treated and how it is defined in the standard test being used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intended use</strong> in relation to a building,— (a) includes any or all of the following: (i) any reasonably foreseeable occasional use that is not incompatible with the intended use: (ii) normal maintenance: (iii) activities undertaken in response to fire or any other reasonably foreseeable emergency; but (b) does not include any other maintenance and repairs or rebuilding.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interceptor trap</strong> A device which will separate and retain desired liquids and solids from a liquid stream and which will provide a water barrier to prevent foul air or gas from entering any downstream system.</td>
<td>CD-G14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate floor</strong> Any upper floor within a firecell and which is not fire separated from the floor below. Upper floors within household units need not meet the specific fire safety requirements which apply to intermediate floors in all other situations.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> 1. An intermediate floor may be open to the firecell or enclosed with non-fire rated construction. If enclosed with fire rated walls another firecell is created. 2. Household units occur only in purpose groups SR and SH. Life safety provisions are governed by the limitations in permitted open path lengths.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>K</strong> <strong>Kerb ramp</strong> means a short ramp either cutting through a kerb or built up to the kerb.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kick-out</strong> A single fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal flashing to deflect moisture away from the cladding system below. Refer also Bird’s beak.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A kick-out is used at the bottom of a capping or other flashing to deflect water away from the cladding below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Licensee</strong></td>
<td>A person holding a licence issued under the Radiation Protection Act 1965 and for the time being in force. CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Licensed building practitioner</strong></td>
<td>means a building practitioner whose name is, for the time being, entered in the register established and maintained under section 298(1) of the Building Act 2004. BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Limited area atrium</strong></td>
<td>A single firecell in which individual occupied spaces at different levels open onto a common enclosed space. Limitations are placed on the number of intermediate floors (no more than two levels), individual floor areas and permitted occupant load, depending on the provisions for smoke detection, smoke control and the means of escape from fire. CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td>Typical limited area atrium buildings are small shopping malls, and motel complexes with a central atrium feature open to a number of floors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lining</strong></td>
<td>The rigid sheet covering for a wall, ceiling or other interior surface. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lock-out</strong></td>
<td>The safety shut down condition of the control system such that re-start cannot be accomplished without manual resetting. CD-C, CD-G11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main private stairway</strong></td>
<td>A private stairway intended to provide access to and between frequently used spaces such as living areas, kitchens and garages, and includes all exterior private stairways. CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry tiles</strong></td>
<td>Clay or concrete tile roof cladding. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry veneer</strong></td>
<td>Clay or concrete block veneer cladding. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Means of escape from fire</strong>, in relation to a building that has a floor area,—</td>
<td>(a)means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that building to a place of safety, and BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b)includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of fire and to assist in protecting people from the effects of fire in the course of their escape from the fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Membrane</strong></td>
<td>A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof cladding, deck surface or, in conjunction with other claddings, as gutters or flashings. CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minister</strong> means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the Building Act 2004. BA04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minor private stairway</strong></td>
<td>A private stairway not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen. CD-D1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

**Multi-unit dwelling** Applies to a *building* or use which contains more than one separate household or family.

**COMMENT:**
For fire safety purposes each household unit is a separate firecell.

### N

**Natural draught** The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise.

**Natural hazard** has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004.

Section 71(3) states:

“(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following:
(a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion):
(b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice):
(c) subsidence:
(d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding):
(e) slippage.”

**Network utility operator** means a person who—

(a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, or geothermal energy; or

(b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of—

(i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or

(ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or

(c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or

(d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or

(e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system

**Nominal pile width** The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.

**Non-combustible** Materials shall be classified as *non-combustible* or *combustible* when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.

**Non-return valve** A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.

**Nosing** The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.
Definition

Notice to fix has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the Building Act 2004.

Section 164(2) states:

“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—

(a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or

(b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or

(c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”

Notional boundary The boundary which for fire safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two buildings on the same property under a single land title.

COMMENT:

A notional boundary may be located anywhere between the two buildings, and once chosen determines the unprotected area permitted in each building. Locating it closer to one building than the other, may be an advantage where it is planned for a rear wall without windows to face the front wall of the other building requiring windows.

NUO system means a system owned or controlled by a network utility operator.

O

Occupant load The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a building. It is determined by:

(a) Multiplying the number of people per m² (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, by the total floor area, or

(b) For sleeping areas, counting the number of beds, or

(c) For fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats.

Occupied space Any space within a building in which a person will be present from time to time during the intended use of the building.

Open path That part of an escape route (including dead ends) not protected by fire or smoke separations, and which terminates at a final exit or exitway.

Open space includes land on which there is and will be no buildings and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.

Open vented storage water heater A water heater incorporating a vent pipe which is permanently open to the atmosphere.

Other property—

(a) means any land or buildings, or part of any land or buildings, that are—

(i) not held under the same allotment; or

(ii) not held under the same ownership; and

(b) includes a road
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outdoor air</strong> Air as typically comprising by volume:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) oxygen 20.94%</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outfall</strong> That part of the disposal system receiving surface water or foul water from the drainage system. For foul water, the outfall may include a sewer or a septic tank. For surface water, the outfall may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Over-pressure protection</strong> Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owner</strong>, in relation to land and any buildings on the land,—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) means the person who—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) the owner of the fee simple of the land; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) any person who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parallel flashing</strong> A roof flashing that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof cladding profile. Also known as a longitudinal flashing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parapet</strong> A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof cladding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penetration</strong> A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a fire separation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penstocks</strong> are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People with disabilities</strong> People whose ability to use buildings is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance criteria</strong> in relation to a building, means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the building is required to satisfy in performing its functional requirement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Person</strong> includes the Crown, a corporation sole, and also a body of persons, whether corporate or unincorporated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Person with a disability** means a person who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the person can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:  
(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment: 
(b) a mental illness. | BA04 |
| **Piping system** An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports. | CD-G14 |
| **Pitch line** The line joining the leading edge or nosings (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of stairs. | CD-F4 (Sep 07) |
| **Plans and specifications**—  
(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a building is proposed to be constructed, altered, demolished, or removed; and  
(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and  
(c) in the case of the construction or alteration of a building, also includes—  
(i) the intended use of the building; and  
(ii) the specified systems that the applicant for building consent considers will be required to be included in a compliance schedule required under section 100; and  
(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for the purposes of the compliance schedule for those specified systems. | BA04 |
| **Plumbing system** Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used for the conveyance of foul water to the foul water drain, and includes vent pipes. | Code |
| **Potable (and potable water)** Water that is suitable for human consumption. | CD-G12 |
| **Potential impact classification** is related to the consequence (effects) of the dam failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental. | DG |
| **Prescribed electrical work** has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992. | BA04, EA |
| **Primary element** A building element providing the basic load bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by fire may initiate instability or premature structural collapse. | CD-B2, CD-C |

**COMMENT:**  
Suspended floors in multi-storey buildings are primary elements.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Principal user</strong> A member of the primary group for which a building was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes persons or groups of persons providing care or control of that principal user group.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privacy</strong> The situation of being withdrawn from view.</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Private stairway</strong> A stairway used, or intended to be used, by the occupants of a single household unit.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privy</strong> A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of disposal or containment of the waste.</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Producer statements</strong> are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of (i) an applicant for a building consent, or (ii) by or on behalf of a person who has carried out building work. that can be accepted by a building consent authority as verification that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with nominated performance requirements of the Building Code.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Although no longer expressly referred to in the Building Act 2004, these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or specifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certificate</strong> means a certificate issued under section 269 of the Building Act 2004 that a building consent authority must accept as establishing compliance with the Building Code.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certification accreditation body</strong> means the person referred to in section 261(2) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong> includes land, buildings, and goods; but does not include incorporeal forms of property.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected path</strong> That portion of an exitway within a firecell which is protected from the effects of smoke by smoke separations.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected shaft</strong> A space, other than a safe path, enclosed by fire separations or external walls used to house building services, lifts, or conveyors which pass from one firecell to another.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purlin</strong> A horizontal member laid to span across rafters or trusses, and to which the roof cladding is attached.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose group</strong> The classification of spaces within a building according to the activity for which the spaces are used.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

**R**

**R-value** The common abbreviation for describing the values of both thermal resistance and total thermal resistance.  

**Rafter** A framing timber, normally parallel to the slope of the roof, providing support for sarking, purlins or roof cladding.  

**Railway line** has the meaning ascribed to it by section 2 of the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989.

The definition of ‘Railway line’ in the Transport Services Licensing Act 1989 has been repealed by the Railways Act 2005. Section 4 of the Railways Act 2005 now contains the definition for “railway line”.

Section 4 states

```
"railway line" —
(a) means a single rail or set of rails, having a gauge of 550 mm or greater between them, laid for the purposes of transporting people or goods by rail; and
(b) includes—
   (i) sleepers, associated formation and ballast, tunnels, and bridges; and
   (ii) in relation to a single rail or set of rails that are laid on a road for the purposes of 1 or more light rail vehicles,—
      (A) any area between the rails; and
      (B) the area that extends 500 mm outside the extremity of any light rail vehicle being used on that single rail or set of rails; and
   (iii) a set of rails, having a gauge of less than 550 mm between them, that is designated as a railway line in regulations made under section 59(l); and
   (iv) except as provided in subparagraph (ii), any area within 5 m of a single rail or within 5 m of a line drawn midway between a set of rails; but
(c) excludes—
   (i) a railway line that is part of a railway used as an amusement device as defined in section 21A(1) of the Machinery Act 1950:
   (ii) a railway line excluded by regulations made under section 59(m):
   (iii) a railway line that exclusively serves private cable cars”.
```

**Reflectance** The ratio of the flux reflected from a surface to the flux incident on it.

**Regional authority** means—

(a) a regional council; or

(b) a unitary authority
Regional council has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002.

Registrar has the meaning given to it by section 282 of the Building Act 2004.

Regulations means regulations in force under the Building Act 2004.

Regulator A device which automatically regulates the pressure or volume of gas passing through it to a predetermined level.

Relevant boundary means the boundary of an allotment which is other property in relation to the building concerned and from which is measured the separation between the building and that other property. For the external wall of any building, the relevant boundary shall be the nearest of the following boundaries:

(a) A boundary of a freehold allotment, except that where the other property is a road, railway line or public open space the relevant boundary is the boundary on the far side of that other property.

(b) A boundary of a cross-lease or of a company lease or licence, except that where the other property is open space to which the lessee or licensee of the building concerned has an exclusive right of access and occupation or to which two or more occupiers have rights of access and occupation the relevant boundary is the boundary on the far side of that other property.

(c) A boundary shown on a unit plan excluding a boundary between a principal unit and its accessory unit, except that where the other property is open space which is common property, the relevant boundary is the boundary on the far side of that other property.

COMMENT:
1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an allotment, the relevant boundary shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist.
2. Boundaries within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the boundary is the external wall or roof of a building.
3. The unit title boundaries of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A boundary is frequently an internal or external wall, an upper floor, or the roof of a building.
4. A wall along a boundary between two allotments is called a “party wall” when the owners of the allotments each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are other property in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The fire protection consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a fire separation providing protection against horizontal fire spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate FRR instead of each property having its own wall of that FRR.

Relief vent A vent pipe which is connected to a discharge stack below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the discharge stack vent or terminates as an open vent.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reservoir</strong> Body of water impounded by one or more dams or dikes, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reservoir capacity</strong> Total or gross storage capacity of the reservoir at full supply level.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Risk matrix</strong> A table that allows the calculation of a risk score by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific building design.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Risk score</strong> An aggregated numerical score for a proposed building as defined by E2/AS1. The risk score is determined by completion of the risk matrix.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Road</strong> has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.</td>
<td>CD-C/LGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rodding point</strong> A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.</td>
<td>CD-E1, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roof underlay</strong> An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water that may penetrate the roof cladding or metal wall cladding.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Room-sealed appliance</strong> An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saddle flashing</strong> A flashing used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safe path</strong> That part of an exitway which is protected from the effects of fire by fire separations, external walls, or by distance when exposed to open air.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safe place</strong> A place of safety in the vicinity of a building, from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a fire. It may be a place such as a street, open space, public space or an adjacent building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety colour (green, red or yellow)</strong> A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety glass</strong> means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to persons when it is cracked or broken.</td>
<td>CD-F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety shut-off system</strong> An arrangement of valves and associated control systems which shuts off the supply of gas when required by a device which senses an unsafe condition.</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety sign</strong> A particular type of sign which comprises a geometric form and a safety colour, together with a safety symbol or text (that is, words, letters, numbers or a combination of these) and gives a particular safety message.</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety symbol</strong> means a graphic symbol used in a safety sign.</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**

**Sanitary appliance**  An appliance which is intended to be used for *sanitation*, but which is not a *sanitary fixture*. Included are machines for washing dishes and clothes.

**Sanitary fixture**  Any fixture which is intended to be used for *sanitation*.

**Sanitation**  The term used to describe the activities of washing and/or excretion carried out in a manner or condition such that the effect on health is minimised, with regard to dirt and infection.

**Scaffolding**  used in the course of the *construction* process, means any structure, framework, swinging stage, suspended scaffolding, or boatswain’s chair, that is of a temporary nature and that is used or intended to be used for: the support or protection of workers engaged in, or in connection with construction work for the purpose of carrying out that work, or the support of materials used in connection with the work; and includes any plank, coupling, fastening, fitting, or device used in connection with the construction, erection, or use of scaffolding.

**Scupper**  An opening in a *parapet* or *enclosed balustrade* to allow water to drain into a rainwater head.

**Secondary element**  A *building element* not providing load bearing capacity to the structure and if affected by *fire*, instability or collapse of the *building* structure will not occur.

**Secondary flow path**  The path over which *surface water* will follow if the drainage system becomes overloaded or inoperative.

**Secondary private stairway**  A *private stairway* other than a *main* or *minor private stairway*, intended to provide access to another floor containing only bedrooms, bathroom or similar accommodation.

**Service ramp**  means a ramp that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.

**Service stairway**  means a *stairway* that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.

**Sewer**  A *drain* that is under the control of, or maintained by, a *network utility operator*.

**Sitework**  means work on a *building* site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the *construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building*.

**Smokecell**  A space within a *building* which is enclosed by an envelope of *smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors*.
**Definition**

**Smoke control door** A *doorset* with closefitting single or multi-leafs which are impermeable to the passage of smoke, fitted with smoke seals and installed within a *smoke separation*. The door, in the event of smoke, if not already closed, will close automatically and be held closed.

**Smoke developed index (SDI)** That index number for smoke developed when determined according to the *standard test* method for measuring the properties of lining materials.

**Smoke separation** Any vertical, horizontal or inclined *building element* with known smoke-stopping or smoke-leakage characteristics.

**Socket outlet** An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.

**Soft edge** A compatible soft edging seamed onto *flashings* to provide closure to profiled *cladding*.

**Soil fixture** A *sanitary fixture* constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.

**Sound transmission class (STC)** A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.

**Specific design** Design and detailing of a proposed *building* or parts of a *building*, demonstrating compliance with the *Building Code*, that shall be provided to the *building consent authority* for assessment and approval as part of the *building consent* process. *Buildings*, or parts of *buildings*, requiring *specific design* are beyond the scope of E2/AS1.

**Specified intended life** has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004.

Section 113(3) states:

“(3) In subsection (2), *specified intended life*, in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”
**Specified system**—

(a) means a system or feature that—

(i) is contained in a building; and

(ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the building
    (for example, an automatic sprinkler system);
    And

(iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a specified
    system for the purposes of this Act; and

(b) includes a cable car.

**Spread of flame index (SFI)** That index number for spread of flame which
is determined according to the standard test method for measuring the
properties of lining materials.

**Spillway** Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed
to permit discharges from the reservoir.

**Stability** In the context of fire protection, the time in minutes for which
a prototype specimen of a primary element, when subject to the standard test
for fire resistance, has continued to carry its fire design load without failure.

**COMMENT:**

The fire design load should be as specified in the limit state loadings code NZS 4203.

**Stairway** A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all
necessary handrails and giving access between two different levels.

**Stanchion** A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a building,
that provides support for handrails, aerials and similar structures.

**Standards** means specifications for building materials, methods, processes
or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable
minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.

**COMMENT:**

Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government.
In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown
entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by
Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the
Commonwealth Government.

**Standard test** A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the
fire protection properties being assessed.

**COMMENT:**

A list of standard test methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1.

**Standard year** For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours
between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for
daylight saving.

**Statutory authority** means an authority or organisation that has the statutory
power to classify or register land or buildings for any purpose.
**Definitions**

**Stopend** A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal cladding, or at the end of gutters and some types of flashings.

**COMMENT:**
A stopend assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.

**Storage water heater** A water tank with an integral water heater for the storage of hot water.

**Storey** That portion of a building included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top storey shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.

**Strength reduction factor** The factor by which the ultimate strength is multiplied to obtain the design strength.

**COMMENT:**
NZS 4203: 1992 uses the terms ideal strength in place of ultimate strength, and dependable strength in place of design strength.

**Structural fire endurance rating (S)** The fire resistance rating (FRR) intended to prevent fire spread or structural collapse for the complete burnout of the firecell.

**Stucco** A wall cladding system formed from reinforced solid plaster over a rigid or non-rigid backing.

**Stud** A vertical framing timber.

**Suite** A firecell providing residential accommodation for the exclusive use of one person or of several people known to one another. It comprises one or more rooms for sleeping and may include spaces used for associated domestic activities such as hygiene and cooking.

**COMMENT:**
1. Bed numbers are limited to 6 in purpose groups SC and SD or 12 in purpose group SA in accordance with C/AS1 Paragraphs 6.6.5 and 6.7.6. Examples may be found in hotels, motels and residential care facilities, such as old people’s homes or in hospices providing temporary family accommodation.
2. It is assumed that the social cohesion of the occupants by virtue of the personal relationship (as family members, friends or associates) would ensure that any individual, becoming aware of fire, would naturally assist others within the firecell to escape. The term suite does not apply to a group of bedrooms where each room is available to different “key-holders”. In some cases a suite may be a single bedroom.

**Sump** A chamber which is installed in the drain and incorporates features to intercept and retain silt, gravel and other debris.

**Supervise,** in relation to building work, means provide control or direction and oversight of the building work to an extent that is sufficient to ensure that the building work—
(a) is performed competently; and
(b) complies with the building consent under which it is carried out.
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>Source</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface finish</strong></td>
<td>The combination of a surface coating and substrate material on surfaces of building elements exposed to view. It can be an applied decorative coating or the uncoated building element itself. For interior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of SFI and SDI. For exterior surfaces the requirements are evaluated in terms of rate of heat release as determined by Appendix C, Paragraph C9.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface water</strong></td>
<td>All naturally occurring water, other than sub-surface water, which results from rainfall on the site or water flowing onto the site, including that flowing from a drain, stream, river, lake or sea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tailing dam</strong></td>
<td>Dam constructed to retain tailings or other waste materials from mining or industrial operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tailpipe</strong></td>
<td>A device placed at the low point of a gas piping system to collect condensate, and from which the condensate may be removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Territorial authority (TA)</strong></td>
<td>means a city council or district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2 of the Local Government Act 2002; and—&lt;br&gt;&lt;br&gt;(a) in relation to land within the district of a territorial authority, or a building on or proposed to be built on any such land, means that territorial authority; and&lt;br&gt;&lt;br&gt;(b) in relation to any part of a coastal marine area (within the meaning of the Resource Management Act 1991) that is not within the district of a territorial authority, or a building on or proposed to be built on any such part, means the territorial authority whose district is adjacent to that part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theatre</strong></td>
<td>A place of assembly intended for the production and viewing of performing arts, and consisting of an auditorium and stage with provision for raising and suspending stage scenery above and clear of the working area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thermal resistance</strong></td>
<td>The resistance to heat flow of a given component of a building element. It is equal to the air temperature difference (°C) needed to produce unit heat flux (W/m²) through unit area (m²) under steady conditions. The units are °Cm²/W.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Threshold</strong></td>
<td>A sill to an external door, or the floor under an internal door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total thermal resistance</strong></td>
<td>The overall air-to-air thermal resistance across all components of a building element such as a wall, roof or floor. (This includes the surface resistances which may vary with environmental changes eg, temperature and humidity, but for most purposes can be regarded as having standard values as given in NZS 4214.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Town gas</strong></td>
<td>A manufactured gas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**

**Toxic environment** An environment that contains *contaminants* that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.

**Trade** means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to—

(a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or

(b) the acquisition of *household units* or any interest in land.

**Transverse flashing** A roof flashing that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof *cladding profile*.

**Trap** A chamber which is installed in the *drain* and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris.

**Trapezoidal** A type of *profiled metal cladding* with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests.

**Travel distance** The length of the *escape route* as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely:

(a) *Open paths*

(b) *Protected paths* and

(c) *Safe paths*.

**Trough profile** A type of *profiled metal cladding* comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile.

**U**

**Unisex facilities** Facilities available for use by either sex.

**COMMENT:**

Unisex facilities may also be described as both *gender facilities*.

**Unitary authority** has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002.

Section 5(1) states:

“*unitary authority*” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under—

(a) the provisions of any Act; or

(b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”

**Unprotected area** in relation to an *external wall* of a *building* means:

(a) Any part of the *external wall* which has less than the required *FRR*. For example, a non *fire rated* window, door or other opening or sheet metal.

(b) Any part of the *external wall* which has *combustible* material more than 1.0mm thick attached to or applied to its external face, whether for *cladding* or any other purpose.
## Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>V</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valley gutter</strong> A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater)</strong> A storage water heater in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vapour barrier</strong> Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in buildings. <em>(Vapour barriers are sometimes referred to as damp-proof membranes.)</em></td>
<td>CD-B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent line</strong> A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the building from a gas pressure regulator relief valve.</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent pipe</strong> A pipe for the purpose of protecting water seals that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an air admittance valve and that at its lower end is connected to a discharge pipe.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verification Method</strong> means a method by which compliance with the Building Code may be verified.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>W</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warm location</strong> means a location in New Zealand where the degree-day total is less than 920.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste pipe</strong> A discharge pipe that conveys the discharge from waste water fixtures to a gully trap.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste water fixture</strong> A sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance used to receive wastes, and which is not a soil fixture.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water heater</strong> A device for heating water.</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water main</strong> A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a network utility operator.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waterproof and waterproofing</strong> The complete and total resistance of a building element to the ingress of any moisture.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water seal</strong> The depth of water that can be retained in a water trap.</td>
<td>CD-G2, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water supply system</strong> Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a water main or other water source to sanitary fixtures, sanitary appliances and fittings within a building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water tank (vessel)</strong> A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water trap</strong> A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the plumbing system or foul water drainage system and entering a building.</td>
<td>CD-G2, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weathertightness and weathertight</strong> Terms used to describe the resistance of a building to the weather. <em>Weathertightness</em> is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the cladding in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the building elements.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> The term <em>weathertightness</em> is not necessarily the same as <em>waterproof</em>. However, a weathertight building, even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside buildings and damage to building elements. Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wetwall</strong> The exterior cladding on a wall with a drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wharenui</strong> A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-H1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wind zone</strong> Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are: Low wind zone = wind speed of 32 m/s Medium wind zone = wind speed of 37 m/s High wind zone = wind speed of 44 m/s Very high wind zone = wind speed of 50 m/s. Specific design is required for wind speeds greater than 50 m/s.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working day</strong> means any day except—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign’s Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(Revised by Amendment 6)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code and Compliance Documents.

A

Access

see Access Routes, and Mechanical Installations for Access

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas................................................................. G1/AS1 3.2, Figure 10
lobbies................................................................. G1/AS1 6.3.1
unisex facilities ................................................................. G1/AS1 1.1.5 c)

Access Routes ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a), 1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1, 2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, A person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings ................................................................. NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)
access within buildings ................................................................. NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5
corridors .................................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), F6.3.1
level access routes ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 2.0
protection from falling ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 2.3
slip resistance ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2
width ........................................................................................................... D1/AS1 2.2
location ........................................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.1
principal entrance ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1
service and maintenance personnel ........................................................................ D1/AS1 11.0.3

Access to facilities ................................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3 (c), G1.3.5, G3/AS1 Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units ................................................................. D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also A Person with a disability
bedrooms ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)
dining areas ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)
facilities ........................................................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2
kitchens ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 b); G3/AS1 1.5.2, Figure 1
laundry ........................................................................................................... G2/AS1 1.2, Figure 2
sitting areas ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)
toilets and baths ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes ................................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4, D1/AS1 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 8.2

Accessible units ................................................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.3

Activity space ................................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3

Aged, homes for

see Old people's homes

Air

see also Ventilation
airflow control ................................................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0
changes ........................................................................................................... G4/VM1 1.0.1
ducts ........................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.9.5, 6.19.14, 6.20.20, 6.20.21
purity ........................................................................................................... G4/VM1 2.0
## Air-handling systems

- G4/AS1 1.3.1 b)

## Airborne and Impact Sound

- G6
  - impact insulation class (IIIC) - NZBC/G6.3.2
  - noise transmission between abutting occupancies - NZBC/G6.1, G6.2
  - sound insulation tests - G6/VM1 2.0
  - sound transmission class (STC) - NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1 1.0

## Alerting devices

- F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2, 2.2.2 b)
- F7/AS1 1.2.8, 2.1.2 c) f)
- F7/AS1 2.1.2 c) f)

## Alerting the Fire Service

- F7/AS1 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2

## Alternative solutions

- D1/AS1 11.0
- E1/AS1 3.9.8
- G4/AS1 3.0
- G2/AS1 1.0.3
- G12/AS1 6.9.1
- G15/AS1 3.1
- G12/AS1 6.11.4
- E3/AS1 1.1.5 (Comment)
- G12/AS1 6.10.1, Figure 14
- G12/AS1 7.5

## Ancillary Buildings

- NZBC/A1 8.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0

## Apartments

- see Housing, multi-unit dwellings

## Appliances

- see Sanitary appliances

## Aprons

- C/AS1 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

## Artificial Light

- G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;
- NZBC/G8.2
- NZBC/G8.3; D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1
- G11/AS1 6.0

## Asbestos

- see Hazardous Building Materials

## Assembly care buildings

- see Communal non-residential buildings

## Assembly service buildings

- see Communal non-residential buildings

## Automatic extinguishers

- G11/AS1 6.0
B

Backflow prevention
see Protection of water supplies


Banks ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Barges ............................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.5, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 92 and 97
see also Gutters, barges and fascias

Barriers ......................................................... F4/AS1 1.0; F5/AS1 1.0

see also Access Routes, Handrails, Safety from Falling.

Timber barriers
accessible route .................................................. D1/AS1 2.3.1
balconies with fixed seating .................................. F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figures 1-4
construction .......................................................... F4/AS1 1.2, Figures 1-4
fences ........................................................................ F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.2
around water hazards .................................................. F5/AS1 1.2
for specific hazards ..................................................... F5/AS1 1.0.2
heights ..................................................................... F4/AS1 1.1, Table 1
hoardings .............................................................. F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5
viewing windows .................................................... F5/AS1 1.1.4
parapet and rail barriers ............................................. F4/AS1 1.2.3, Figure 5
safety enclosures for ladders .................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
scaffolding .......................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.6
stair barriers ......................................................... F4/AS1 Figure 4
toeboards ........................................................ F5/AS1 1.4
types of barriers .................................................. F5/AS1 1.0.3

Basements ...... C/AS1 3.3.2 ii), 3.7.1, 3.15.2, 4.5.15, 6.9.3, 16.4.4, Figure 3.19; E2/AS1 12.0

requirements ......................................................... E2/AS1 12.3.1
damp-proof membrane .......................................... E2/AS1 12.2
DPM materials ...................................................... E2/AS1 12.2.2
DPM requirements ................................................ E2/AS1 12.2.1

see also Floors, basement floors

Basins ......................................................... G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; G13/AS1 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2

Baths ..................................................................... G1/AS1 Table 2; G13/AS1 Table 2

Bedrooms  see Habitable spaces

Bidets ........................................................ G1/AS1 2.4; G13/AS1 5.5.2, Table 2

Boarding Houses
see Communal residential buildings

Boundary
see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries

 Bridges
see Ancillary buildings

Building construction
non-solid construction ............................................. H1/AS1 2.1.1 (Comment)
solid construction .................................................. H1/AS1 2.1.1 (Comment)
thermal envelope .................................................... H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 2.1.1 (Comment)
thermal resistance (R-value) .................. H1/VM1 1.4, H1/AS1 2.1.1 (Comment), 2.2.1, 2.3
Building elements ................................................... NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E2.3.4, E2.3.5, E2.3.6, E3.2, E3.3.5, F3.3 (f), G3.3.2 (b) (c), G6.2, G9.3.1 (a) (e); B1/VM4 1.0; C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.2.1, 5.6.1

see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs

primary elements ................................................... C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 a), c), 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.4, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.9, 6.14.3, 7.1.2 b), 7.8.10 b), 7.9.4, 7.9.5 a), 7.10.3, 7.10.4, C7.1.1

requiring noise control ................................................... G6/AS1 1.0.2, Figure 1

secondary elements ................................................... C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 b), 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.8, 7.1.2 b), 7.10.3, C7.1.1

unrated primary ................................................... C/AS1 5.9.4, Figure 5.2

Building site ............................................................... C/AS1 5.7.6 c), 7.11.3 a), 7.11.4

Building performance index

housing ................................................................. H1/VM1 1.2

evaluation ............................................................. E1/VM1 1.0.3

Buildings

air-supported structures ................................................... C/AS1 6.20.18
atriums ................................................................. C/AS1 6.22
building elements ................................................... B1/VM4 2.0.3
building separation ................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3 (e)
car parking ........................................................... C/AS1 6.8.4, 6.10.3 to 6.10.8, 7.8.2, 7.9.16, Figure 6.2
carports ................................................................. C/AS1 7.8.10 (Comment)
commercial ........................................................... H1/AS1 1.0.1, 6.1.1

communal non-residential ........................................ H1/AS1 1.0.3
assembly care ......................................................... H1/AS1 1.0.1, 6.1.1
assembly service .................................................... H1/AS1 1.0.1, 6.1.1

communal residential ................................................ H1/AS1 1.0.1
dwellings

attached and multi-unit ........................................ C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6

detached ............................................................. C/AS1 1.3.3

earth buildings ....................................................... B1/VM1 8.0, B1/AS1 4.0
education ............................................................. C/AS1 3.8.4, 6.20.7
farm buildings ....................................................... B1/VM1 13.0

grandstands ........................................................ C/AS1 3.16.7
hospitals ............................................................. C/AS1 6.6.6
hotels, motels and accommodation ....................... C/AS1 2.2.3

housing ................................................................. H1/VM1 1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 2.1
detached dwellings ............................................... H1/VM1 1.1 (Comment)
group dwellings ................................................... H1/VM1 1.1 (Comment)
multi-unit dwellings ............................................ H1/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2 (Comment), H1/AS1 2.1.1

wharenuia ............................................................ H1/VM1 1.1.1 (Comment)

industrial .............................................................. H1/AS1 1.0.2

intended life

see Durability

intended use

see Intended use

large buildings ...................................................... H1/VM1 1.3
masonry buildings ................................................ B1/AS1 1.1.1
membrane structures ........................................... NZBC/C4.1.1; C/AS1 6.20.17 to 6.20.19
minimum floor level ............................................. E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
multi-storey buildings .......................................... C/AS1 2.2.5, 6.12.2
open air auditoriums ............................................. C/AS1 7.8.8 to 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
open sided buildings .......................................... C/AS1 3.16.5
purpose group classification ................................ C/AS1 2.2, Table 2.1

reference building ............................................... H1/AS1 2.1.1 (Comment)
remaining occupied during fire ................................. C/AS1 5.6.9

residential community care .................................... C/AS1 2.4
seasonal use buildings ........................................ F7/AS1 1.1.2 c)
single-floor buildings .......................................... F7/AS1 1.1.2 a)
Buildings (continued)

siteworks
see Structure
small buildings .............................................................................................. H1/VM1 1.1
taverns ............................................................................................................ C/AS1 2.2.3
theatres ......................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.19.9, Figure 6.13
three-floor buildings ..................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.2 b)
three storey buildings ................................................................................... G13/AS1 Figure 7
timber framed buildings ............................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.1
two-floor buildings ....................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)
wharenui ...................................................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), 6.7.9, H1/VM1 1.1.1 (Comment)
C

Call points........................................................................................................F7/AS1 1.1.4

Camping grounds........ NZBC/G2.2, G2.3.4; G1/AS1 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; G2/AS1 Table 1

see also Communal residential buildings

Car parking buildings

see Commercial buildings, Vehicles

Carports

see Outbuildings

Catchment characteristics ................................................................. E1/VM1 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1

Ceilings ................................................................................................. NZBC/G6.3.1, G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3

floor/ceiling assemblies ........................................................................ G6/AS1 Figure 3

Centres for people with disabilities

see Communal non-residential buildings

Child care centres

see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings

Children ......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (h), F4.3.3, F4.3.4 (f), F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d), F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); B1/AS2 1.0.2; D1/AS1 4.1.8 a); F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4; F5/AS1 1.0.2

See also Early childhood centres

Chimneys ......................................................... B1/AS1 1.2, 8.0, B1/AS3 2.1; C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3

bracing units................................................................. B1/AS3 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2

brick chimneys ................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a), 1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1

cantilever height ................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.2

chimney bases ............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)

chimney breasts .............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.5, Table 1

chimney depth ................................................................................ B1/AS1 1.1.3

chimney height .............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.2

chimney liners .............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.4

chimney lintels ............................................................................. B1/AS1 Table 1

chimney stacks ............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.6.1

chimney wall thickness .................................................................. B1/AS1 1.2, 1.2.1

chimney width .............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.3

cement chimneys .......................................................................... B1/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 b) c) 1.6.2 a) b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 b), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1

cement masonry ............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.8.4

floor brackets ............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) c), Figure 6

foundations .................................................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1

foundation slabs ........................................................................... B1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.3.2, 1.7.4, 1.7.5

gathers ............................................................................................. B1/AS1 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.7.5

hearts ............................................................................................... B1/AS1 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3

hearth slabs ................................................................................. B1/AS1 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3

packers .......................................................................................... B1/AS1 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)

precast pumice concrete chimneys .............................................. B1/AS1 1.1.1 b), 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 c), 1.6.2 b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.3, 1.8.5 c), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1

compressive strength ...................................................................... B1/AS1 1.8.3 c)

construction of ............................................................................. B1/AS1 1.8.3

restraint .......................................................................................... B1/AS1 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7

roof brackets ............................................................................... B1/AS1 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6

roof ties ........................................................................................... B1/AS1 1.7.5

structural diaphragms ................................................................... B1/AS1 1.9.5

wall ties ........................................................................................... B1/AS1 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8

closely spaced wall ties ............................................................. B1/AS1 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)
Index

Churches
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cinemas
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cladding finish colours
  see Classified uses

Cleaners’ sinks
  see Classified uses

Clubrooms
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves)
  see Classified uses

Colleges
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Commercial buildings
  see Classified uses

Communal non-residential buildings
  see Classified uses

Communal residential buildings
  see Communal non-residential buildings

Communes
  see Housing, group dwellings

Community care buildings
  see Communal residential buildings

Community service buildings
  see Communal residential buildings

Computer centres
  see Commercial buildings

Concealed spaces
  see Classified uses

Concealed works
  see Classified uses

Concrete
  see Classified uses

Condensation
  see Internal Moisture
Construction moisture ......................................................... E2/AS1 11.0
maximum acceptable moisture contents .................................. E2/AS1 11.2
measuring moisture content .................................................. E2/AS1 11.3
concrete floors ................................................................. E2/AS1 11.3.2
timber ................................................................. E2/AS1 11.3.1
moisture in materials ...................................................... E2/AS1 11.1
Construction site barriers .................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.6

Construction and Demolition Hazards .................................. F5
areas accessible to the public ................................................ NZBC/F5.3.2
barriers ............................................................... NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4
demolition sites .............................................................. F5/AS1 1.0
entry of children .......................................................... NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3; F5/AS1 1.0.2
falling objects ............................................................. NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1
lifting equipment .......................................................... NZBC/F5.3.4

Contaminants
see Hazardous agents on site, contaminants

Contaminated air discharge .................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.1 f)

Control panel ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)

Cooling towers ............................................................... HB CS 9

Corridors ............................................................................. C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
see also Access Routes

Corrosives
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 8

Creep
see Structure, loads

Cross connections
see Protection of water supplies

Cyclic loads
see Structure, loads
Index

D

Dampness

see External Moisture, Internal Moisture

Dams

see Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods

see also Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes

Day care institution

see Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends

see Escape routes

Decks and pergolas

E2/AS1 7.0, 9.1.3.6

see also Membrane roofs and decks

see also Enclosed Balustrades

attachment to building structure ....................... E2/AS1 7.2

E2/AS1 7.2.2, Figure 15

slatted timber decks to walls .............................. E2/AS1 7.2.1, Figure 15

cantilevered decks ............................................ E2/AS1 7.2.1.1, Figure 16

E2/AS1 7.3, Figures 17A and 17B

closed decks ................................................ E2/AS1 7.3.1, Figure 17A

ground floor level access .................................... E2/AS1 7.3.2, Figure 17B

E2/AS1 7.3.2.2, Figure 17B

timber floor .................................................... E2/AS1 7.3.1.2

E2/AS1 7.1, Figure 14

enclosed decks ................................................. E2/AS1 7.1.2

E2/AS1 7.1.1, Figures 15b and 16

Deflections

see Structure

Demolition

see Construction and Demolition Hazards

Dental surgeries

NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)

see also Commercial buildings

Design

aluminium ......................................................... B1/VM1 7.0

cement .............................................................. B1/VM1 3.0

see Drains

founding

see Foundations

loadings ............................................................ B1/VM1 1.1, 2.0

earthquake ....................................................... B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2

limit state ........................................................ B1/VM1 1.1.2, 7.1 b)

non-limit state .................................................. B1/VM1 1.1.3

site effects (local) or faults ................................. B1/VM1 1.1.4

masonry ......................................................... B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 3.3

settlement ....................................................... B1/VM1 10.0

steel ............................................................... B1/VM1 5.0

strength reduction factor ................................. B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4

timber ............................................................ B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0

see also Timber barriers

windows

see Windows
Design loads
see Structure, loads

Detached dwellings
see Housing

Differential movement
see Structure, loads

Disabled persons
see a Person with a disability

Discharge pipes .............................................................. G3/AS1 4.5.2, 4.6, 5.1.1, 5.5, 5.7.2, Figures 6 and 11, Table 4
branch discharge pipes ......................................................... G3/AS1 Figure 7
diameters ......................................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, 4.3, 5.3, Table 6, G13/AS2 3.6, 4.2
fixure discharge pipes .......................................................... G13/AS1 Figures 7 and 8, Tables 2 and 4
gradient ........................................................................... G13/AS1 4.4, 5.4, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
waste pipes
combined waste pipes ...................................................... G13/AS1 Figure 5
developed lengths ............................................................ G13/AS1 Figures 5, 6 and 8

Discharge stacks .................................................................. G13/AS1 4.2.2 a), 4.5.1 b), 4.7, 5.3.1, 5.6, Figures 7 to 9, Tables 3, 4 and 6
see also Discharge pipes, Pipes
discharge stack vents ......................................................... G13/AS1 4.7.1 b), 5.2.1 b), 5.3.1, 5.6.1, 5.6.3 b), Figures 7 and 8, Table 6, G13/AS2 4.1.5, Figure 5

Discharge units ................................................................. G13/AS1 Table 2, G13/AS2 Table 2

Dishwashing machine ......................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2 a) e), Table 2

Domestic buildings
see Housing

Doors
see also Windows and doors
 NZBC/D1.3.4 (f), D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (n), D1.3.4 (f), D2.3.5 (c), F5.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.9.1, 3.11.6, 6.19.4; D1/AS1 7.0, Figure 27;
acceptable obstructions ........................................................ C/AS1 3.3.6
accessible doors .................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.3 to 7.0.5
accessible escape routes ..................................................... C/AS1 3.3.7
automatic sliding doors ........................................................ C/AS1 3.17.7
closers and latching ............................................................. C/AS1 3.17.1
degree and width of opening ................................................ C/AS1 3.17.4, 3.17.5
delayed action unlocking devices ........................................ C/AS1 3.17.11
direction of opening ............................................................ C/AS1 3.17.3, 3.17.4
door swings ...................................................................... C/AS1 3.4.5 b), 3.13.2, 3.17.5 d) e)
fire doors C/AS1 3.3.1 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.11.9, 3.17.9, 3.17.13, 6.19.2 a), C8.1, Figures 3.29 to 3.31, Table 6.1;
frameless glass doors .......................................................... D1/AS1 7.0.7
fitting .......................................................... C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11; D1/AS1 7.0.4, Figure 28
handles ............................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.5
hold-open devices .............................................................. C/AS1 3.17.1 b), 3.17.9, F7/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2
lift landing doors ............................................................... C/AS1 6.16.5 b), 6.19.13, Table 6.1
lobby doors ........................................................................ D1/AS1 7.0.1
locking devices ................................................................. C/AS1 3.17.2, 3.18.6
markings ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.19.6, 6.19.7
panic bolts .......................................................................... C/AS1 3.17.14
revolving doors, automatic doors and access control systems ......................................................... C/AS1 3.17.7, 3.17.8,
Figure 3.26; D1/AS1 7.0.6, Figure 29
signs .................................................................................. C/AS1 3.20.1
smoke control doors .......................................................... C/AS1 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C8.1,
Figures 3.27, 3.28 and 6.1, Table 6.1
Doors (continued)

subdividing escape routes .......................................................... C/AS1 3.17
turnstile ........................................................................................ D1/AS1 7.0.6
visibility .................................................................................... D1/AS1 7.0.4
vision panels .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.17.6, 5.8.10
width .......................................................................................... D1/AS1 7.0.3

Downlights .................................................................................. C/AS1 9.4

Downpipes ................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.4.2 a) b) i), 3.7.8, 4.0, 5.11
installation .................................................................................. E1/AS1 4.3
materials .................................................................................... E1/AS1 4.1, Table 4
sizing .......................................................................................... E1/AS1 4.2, Table 5

Drainage system ........................................................................ G13/AS1 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), G13/AS2 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1

Drains .......................................................................................... NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, B1/VM1 11.0, B1/AS1 6.0, G13/AS1 4.2.2 d), G13/AS2 1.0

access points ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8
access chambers ...... E1/VM1 5.0.1, E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12
inspection chambers ................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11
inspection points ....................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b)
rodding points .......................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10
alignment .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5

see also Drain, layout
bedding and backfilling ......................................................... E1/AS1 3.9, 3.9.2, Figure 13; G13/AS2 Figure 7
alternative solutions ................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.6
materials .................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.5; G13/AS2 Table 1
placing and compacting ......................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.6; G13/AS2 5.5
proximity to buildings ............................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.7, Figure 14;
trench slope ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.3
trench width ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.4
bends ......................................................................................... G13/AS2 5.1
bubbling up chamber system .............................................. G13/AS2 3.2.1, Figures 11 and 7
connections ............................................................................. G13/AS2 5.2, Figure 7
diameter

see Drains, sizing
disused drains .......................................................................... G13/AS2 5.10
downstream water systems ...................................................... E1/VM1 4.3
drainage vents .......................................................................... G13/AS2, Figure 3, Table 3
drain pipes under buildings .................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.6 to 3.7.8

gradients .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b), G13/AS1 Table 5, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
minimum gradient ................................................................. E1/AS1 3.4, Table 2
installation ................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.0, 5.5
joints ......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.5, Table 3; G13/AS2 5.1
junctions .................................................................................... G13/AS2 3.2
layout ......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
leakage tests ............................................................................ E1/VM1 8.0, E1/AS1 3.6
high pressure air test ................................................................. E1/VM1 8.3
low pressure air test ................................................................. E1/VM1 8.2
water test .................................................................................. E1/VM1 8.1

maintenance access

see Maintenance access to drains
materials .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.1, Table 1; G13/AS2 2.0, Table 1
open water, upstream of site .................................................. E1/VM1 4.2
pipe water, upstream of site ..................................................... E1/VM1 4.1
quantity .................................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.10
tailwater depth ................................................................. E1/VM1 4.1.6, 4.1.7
proximity to buildings ........................................................ G13/AS2 5.6, Figure 8
secondary flow ........................................................................ E1/VM1 4.0, 4.1.11 E1/AS1 1.0.1 d)
downstream drainage ............................................................ E1/VM1 4.3
headwater depth ................................................................. E1/VM1 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11
Drains (continued)

site – outfall protection .......................................................... E1/VM1 7.0
sizing .......................................................... E1/VM1 3.0, E1/AS1 3.2, Figure 3; G13/AS2 3.6, Table 2
energy losses .......................................................... E1/VM1 5.0
hydraulic design of drains .................................................. E1/VM1 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
air entrainment .......................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.4
headwater depth .......................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
minimum size .......................................................... E1/VM1 3.1
minimum velocity .......................................................... E1/VM1 6.0
pipe size decrease .......................................................... E1/VM1 5.0.2
soak pits .......................................................... E1/VM1 9.0, Figure 13
sumps .......................................................... E1/AS1 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
surface water inlets .......................................................... E1/AS1 3.6
under buildings .......................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.6; G13/AS2 5.8, 5.9, Figure 13
upstream water systems .................................................. E1/VM1 4.1, 4.2
ventilation .......................................................... G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
watertightness .......................................................... G13/AS2 6.1.1

Draught diverters .......................................................... G4/AS1 2.3.2

Drinking fountains .......................................................... G13/AS1 Table 2

durability .......................................................... B2; B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
code compliance certificate .......................................................... NZBC/B2.3
ease of access and replacement .................................................. B2/AS1 1.2.1
evaluation .......................................................... B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
generic materials .......................................................... B2/AS1 1.3.1, Table 1
evaluation .......................................................... B2/AS1 3.0
in service history .......................................................... B2/VM1 1.1
laboratory testing .......................................................... B2/VM1 1.2
similar materials .......................................................... B2/VM1 1.3
intended life .......................................................... NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3
5 year durability .......................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
15 year durability .......................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
50 year durability .......................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
maintenance .......................................................... B2/AS1 2.0
normal .......................................................... B2/AS1 2.1
scheduled .......................................................... B2/AS1 2.2
specified intended life .......................................................... NZBC/B2.3
timber .......................................................... B2/AS1 3.2

Dynamic loads

see Structure, loads
E

Early childhood centres.................................................. NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G5/AS1 1.0.3

see also Communal non-residential buildings

Earth buildings ............................................................................................................ B2/AS1 3.4

Earth pressure
see Structure, loads

Earth retaining structures ................................................................. B1/VM4 2.0.3

Earthquakes
see Structure, loads

seismic resistance of building services ..................................................... B1/VM1 1.4.0

Ease of access and replacement................................................................. B2/AS1 1.2.1

Effluents......................................................................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1 f)

EIFS ................................................................................................................................. G9/VM1 1.0.1, G9/AS1 1.0.1

coating......................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9

decorative mouldings ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6.4

finish coats ............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6.3

reinforcing............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6.1

reinforcing base coat......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6.2

EIFS/floor slab junction .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.7, Figure 125

general..................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.2

installation ........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.4, Table 23

fixing blocks .......................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.1, Table 24

fixings ....................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.2

joints ......................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.3

movement control joints ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.3, Figure 124

insulation .................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.5

battens ..................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.5.1

limitations .............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.1

materials ............................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3

fibreglass reinforcing mesh .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3.2

polystyrene sheet ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3.1

parapets and enclosed balustrades ............................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.10

EIFS topped enclosed balustrades ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figure 129

metal cappings .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10.1, Figures 12, 13 and 130

pipes and service penetrations ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.8, Figure 126

windows and doors ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.9, Figures 127 and 128

Electrical codes of practice............................................................................. G9/VM1 1.0.1

Electricity .................................................................................................................. G9

electrical installations ................................................................................. NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1 1.0

domestic cooking and refrigeration .......................................................... G3/AS1 1.4.1

laundries ................................................................................................................ G2/AS1 1.1.2

electromechanical stress .............................................................................. NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)

essential services ............................................................................................... NZBC/G9.3.2

external supply system .................................................................................. NZBC/G9.3.3

a person with a disability ............................................................................. NZBC/G9.3.4

light switches ....................................................................................................... G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)

socket outlets ..................................................................................................... G9/AS1 2.0.1 c)

temperature ....................................................................................................... NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)

Emergency lighting

see Lighting for Emergency
Enclosed balustrades .......................................................... E2/AS1 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.8, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 101 and 102
balustrade-to-deck floor junction .................................. E2/AS1 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
balustrade-to-wall junctions ............................................. E2/AS1 7.4.2, Figures 11-13
deck drainage ................................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.1
EIFS-topped ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figure 129
flush-finished topped balustrades .................................... E2/AS1 9.7.8.1, Figure 117
metal cappings ............................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
balustrades for housing ..................................................... E2/AS1 7.4.4.1, Figures 11-13
balustrades – other than housing ...................................... E2/AS1 7.4.4.2, Figures 11-13
stanchions .............................................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.5, Figure 19
stucco topped balustrades ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.9.1, Figure 117

Enclosing rectangles ...................................................... C/AS1 7.3.6, 7.5, 7.6
building on sloping sites and buildings of irregular height ................................................. C/AS1 7.5.9, 7.5.10, Figure 7.7
exceptions for SH, SR and SA buildings ........................ C/AS1 7.5.7, 7.5.8, Figure 7.7
Method 2 ........................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 a), 7.3.6 to 7.3.8, 7.3.12, 7.5, Figures 7.5 to 7.7, Table 7.2
Method 3 ........................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 b), 7.3.8, 7.3.12, 7.6, Figure 7.8
Method 4 ........................................................................ C/AS1 7.3.4 c), 7.3.9, 7.7, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4

Energy cut-offs ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2

Energy Efficiency ........................................................................ H1; E3/AS1 1.1.5,
building performance index (BPI) .................................. NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1 1.2
heat gain ........................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1 4.0
heat loss ............................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.4
heating ................................................................................ NZBC/H1.3.2
indoor temperature and humidity ...................................... NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1

Energy efficiency provisions
airflow control .................................................................. H1/AS1 3.0
artificial lighting .............................................................. H1/AS1 1.0.3, 6.0
building performance index .............................................. H1/VM1 1.2
hot water systems ........................................................... H1/AS1 5.0
internal moisture gain ...................................................... H1/VM1 1.2.1 Comment, H1/AS1 2.1.1 Comment
solar heat gain ..................................................................... H1/AS1 4.0

Entrances
principal .............................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.1

Environment
see Interior Environment

Escalators
see Mechanical Installations for Access

Escape height ................................................................. C/AS1 2.2.9 a), 3.3.4, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.18.1, 4.5.10 b), 5.3.3 c), 7.10.3 Comment
7.9.10, Figure 3.20, Table 4.1

Escape routes ............................................................... NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1 to 3.4, 3.6.1, 3.7.1, 3.9.12 to 3.9.14, 3.11.4, 3.17.3, 3.17.5, 4.5.7, Figures 3.1 to 3.5, Tables 3.1 and 3.2, D1/AS1 1.1.5, F8/AS1 3.0

see also Means of Escape
accessible ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.3.7, 3.17.5 a)
doors subdividing escape routes .................................. C/AS1 3.17
exitways ................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 a), 3.11, 3.12, 6.9.1, 6.16.7, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.3 and 3.20, Tables 2.1, 6.1 to 6.3
external exitways ......................................................... C/AS1 3.16.4, 5.6.3 c), 7.9.1, 7.9.3
lighting .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.19.1
lighting for emergency
see Fire safety precautions
pressurisation
see Fire safety precautions
Escape routes; exitways (continued)

- split level exits .................................................. C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
- ventilation of enclosed exitways ......................... C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
- external ................................................................. C/AS1 3.14
- handrails ............................................................... C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c)
- height and width of escape routes ....................... C/AS1 3.3
- height ..................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.1
- width ................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 to 3.3.5, 3.9.4 to 3.9.6, 3.9.12 e), 3.17.5,
  Figures 3.3, 3.4 and 3.8, Tables 3.2 and 3.4
- length of escape routes ....................................... C/AS1 3.4, 3.5, 3.11.7, 6.13.1,
  Figures 3.7, 3.9 and 3.10, Table 3.3
- number of escape routes ...................................... C/AS1 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
- obstructions ......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6, 3.4.2 c), 3.17.5 a) e), 3.18.3
- access control systems ......................................... C/AS1 3.17.7
- chains ..................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6
- crowd control barriers ........................................ C/AS1 3.3.6
- sliding bars .......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6
- turnstiles ............................................................. C/AS1 3.3.6
- open paths ............................................................ C/AS1 3.2.8, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15, 3.32 f),
  3.3.7, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8, 3.9, 3.17.3 a),
  3.17.5 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.1, 3.7,
  3.9, 3.12 and 3.16, Table 3.3
- dead end open paths ............................................ C/AS1 3.13.4 Step 2, 3.3.2 b),
  3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.10, 3.14.4, Table 3.3
- increases in open path lengths .............................. C/AS1 3.5
- intermediate floors .............................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.1 a),
  3.4.6, 3.9.13, Figure 3.9
- length ................................................................. C/AS1 1.3.4 Step 2, 2.2.8, 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.4, 3.4.6 to 3.4.9,
  3.5, 3.15.1, Figures 3.7 and 3.9, Table 3.3
- number of open paths ......................................... C/AS1 3.8.1
- ramps ................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, 3.14.7
- separation of open paths ...................................... C/AS1 3.8.3, Figure 3.12
- size of open paths ............................................... C/AS1 3.8.1
- sloping floors and ceilings .................................... C/AS1 3.8.4 a)
- special cases ....................................................... C/AS1 3.9
- aisles ..................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.4 to 3.9.9, Figure 3.15
- exception for education buildings ......................... C/AS1 3.8.4
- fixed seating ....................................................... C/AS1 3.9.3, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Table 3.4
- ladders ............................................................... C/AS1 3.10.2
- long corridors ..................................................... C/AS1 6.13, Figure 6.5
- loose seating ....................................................... C/AS1 3.9.10, 3.9.11
- separate tenancies .............................................. C/AS1 3.9.1
- subdivision ........................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- unenclosed stairs ............................................... C/AS1 3.9.14
- protected paths .................................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.7.1 a), 3.9.12, 3.9.13, 3.11.1, 3.11.2,
  3.15.3 b), 3.16.3, 6.9.1, 6.9.6 a), 6.10.4 a),
  6.11.3 b), Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.8, 3.11, 3.19,
  3.28 and 3.30, Tables 2.1 and 6.1
- floor area ............................................................. C/AS1 3.4.3, 3.4.5
- length ............................................................... C/AS1 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.4, 6.13.1 a), Table 3.3
- subdivision ........................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- safe paths .......................................................... C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.4.1 b), 3.7.1, 3.9.14, 3.11.4 to 3.11.6, 3.11.9,
  3.14.1, 3.15.3 b), 3.15.6, 3.15.8 a), 3.16.1,3.16.6, 3.16.8,
  3.16.9, 6.9.2 to 6.9.4, 6.10.4 a), 6.22.2 d), 7.2.1 b),
  7.7.1, A2.1.1 Type 13 Type 19, Figures 3.1, 3.8, 3.16, 3.19, 3.21,
  3.22, 3.24, 3.29 to 3.31 and 5.1, Tables 2.1, 6.1 and 7.4
- glazing .............................................................. C/AS1 5.8, Figure 5.1
- horizontal safe paths ........................................ C/AS1 3.11.6 a), 3.11.7, 3.11.8, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.8
- length restrictions ................................................ C/AS1 3.11.7, 3.15.5 c)
- permitted activities ........................................... C/AS1 3.12.2
- subdivision ........................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- vertical safe paths ............................................. C/AS1 3.11.6 b), 3.11.7, 3.12.3, 3.13.3, 3.18.3,
  3.17.9 b), 3.17.12 a),3.17.13 e), 6.9.7, 6.9.11,
  A2.1.1 Type 14, Figure 6.1
Escape routes (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signs</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single escape routes</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active purpose groups</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.3, 3.15.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basements</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.2, Figure 3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridges</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External balconies</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External stairways</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate floors</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.21, 3.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal stairs</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.6, Figure 3.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping purpose groups</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.5, Figure 3.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split level exitways</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stairs</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.15.6, 3.15.7, Figures 3.21 to 3.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface finishes</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.3.2 h, 3.4.2 e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equipotential bonding.......................................................... G12/AS1 9.0
Earth bonding conductors .................................................. G12/AS1 9.3
Installation of conductors ................................................ G12/AS1 9.2
Metallic sanitary fixtures .................................................. G12/AS1 9.2.2, Figure 20
Metallic water supply pipes .............................................. G12/AS1 9.2.1, Figure 19

Escape through adjacent fire cell ........................................... C/AS1 3.9.12, Figure 3.16

Escape through adjoining building .......................................... C/AS1 3.6, Figure 3.11

Evacuation time ........................................................................ NZBC/F6.3.1

Exitways..................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2, 1.3.5 c, F8/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.3
Pressurisation ............................................................................ F7/AS1 1.3.7

Explosion

see Structure, loads, and Hazardous Substances and Processes

Explosives

see also Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 1 Explosives

External Moisture ........................................................................... E2
Concealed spaces ................................................................. NZBC/E2.3.5
Elements in contact with the ground ......................................... NZBC/E2.3.3
External walls ............................................................................ NZBC/E2.3.2
Moisture present at completion of construction ......................... NZBC/E2.3.6
Roofs ......................................................................................... NZBC/E2.3.1, E2.3.2
Scope ......................................................................................... E2/VM1 1.2, AS1 1.0
Construction excluded ................................................................ E2/AS1 1.2
Acoustics ................................................................................... E2/AS1 1.2.3
Commercial and industrial roofing .......................................... E2/VM1 3.0
Outbuildings ............................................................................. E2/AS1 1.2.1
Skillion roofs .......................................................................... E2/VM1 3.0
Spread of flame ........................................................................... E2/AS1 1.2.2
Construction included ............................................................... E2/AS1 1.1
Provisions for snow ................................................................... E2/AS1 1.3
Qualifications .............................................................................. E2/AS1 1.5
Specific design ............................................................................. E2/AS1 1.4
Windows and doors ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
Snow ............................................................................................... NZBC/E2.3.1
Suspended floors ......................................................................... NZBC/E2.3.4
Verification Method .................................................................... E2/VM1 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, Appendix 1
Alternative test options ................................................................. E2/VM1 1.5
Commercial and industrial roofing .............................................. E2/VM1 3.0
general ......................................................................................... E2/VM1 1.1
Pitched roofing systems ............................................................. E2/VM1 2.0
Scope .............................................................................................. E2/VM1 1.2
Skillion roofs ........................................................................... E2/VM1 3.0
Set procedure .............................................................................. E2/VM1 1.4
External walls ........................................C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 6.12.7, 7.1.1, 7.3, 7.4.1, 7.5 to 7.7, 7.8.7, 7.9.7, 7.9.10, 7.9.11, 7.10, 7.11.2, Figures 6.11, 6.12, 7.1, 7.3 and 7.11, Table 7.5
cladding ..................................................C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.11.2, 7.11.3, C9.1, Table 7.5
fire resistance ratings .....................C/AS1 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 7.3.10, 7.4.3, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.9, 7.9.13, 7.10
firecell separation ..............C/AS1 7.3, 7.8 to 7.10, Figures 7.1 to 7.12, Tables 7.1 to 7.4
glazing ..................................................C/AS1 7.3.3 c), 7.3.5 to 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
return walls ..............C/AS1 7.3.3 e), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
surface finishes ..................C/AS1 7.9.1 c), 7.11.2 to 7.11.3
wing walls ..................C/AS1 7.3.3 d), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
F

F rating
see Fire resistance ratings

Factories
see Industrial buildings

Falsework
see Structure

Farm buildings
see Buildings, farm buildings

Fascias
see Gutters, barge and fascias

FHC
see Fire hazard category

FI
see Flammability index

Fibre cement sheet .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.3.6.2, 9.7
  corners ............................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.5
    flush-finished systems .............................................. E2/AS1 9.7.5.2, Figures 111-113
      (internal and external corners)
    non-flush-finished .................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.5.1, Figures 109, 111-112
      (internal and external corners)
  decorative attachments ................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.9
  finishes ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.10
    flush-finished cladding ............................................. E2/AS1 9.7.10.2
    non-flush-finished cladding ...................................... E2/AS1 9.7.10.1
    installation .................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.3, Table 23
    fixings ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.3.1, Table 24
  joints ................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.4
    control joints ............................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.4.1, Table 19
  flush-finished ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.4.3, Figure 110
  non-flush-finished ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.4.2, Figures 103-108
  limitations ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.7.1
  flush-finished joint systems ....................................... E2/AS1 9.7.1.1
  material .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.2
  parapets and enclosed balustrades ................................. E2/AS1 9.7.8
    flush-finished topped balustrades ................................ E2/AS1 9.7.8.1, Figure 117
  soffit details .................................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.6, Figure 114
  windows and doors ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.7.7
    windows – direct fixed ............................................... E2/AS1 9.7.7.1, Figure 115
    windows – on cavity .................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.7.2, Figure 116

Fibre cement weatherboards ............................................. E2/AS1 9.5
  installation ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3, Table 23
  external corners .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.3.3, Figures 88 and 89
  fixings ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.3.1, Table 24
  internal corners ............................................................ E2/AS1 9.5.3.4, Figure 89
  laps and joints ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.3.2, Figure 87
  limitations ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.5.1
  material performance ................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.2
  parapets and enclosed balustrades ................................ E2/AS1 9.5.5
  protective coating ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.6
  windows and doors ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.5.4
    windows – direct fixed ............................................... E2/AS1 9.5.4.1, Figure 90
    windows – on cavity .................................................. E2/AS1 9.5.4.2, Figure 91

Filters
see Strainers

Final exits .................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.4.5, 3.16.4, 3.17.1 c), 3.18.1, 6.20.18 a), Figures 3.1,
  3.2, 3.12, 3.19, 3.24 and 3.31, Table 6.1; F8/AS1 3.1.1 a) b), 3.2.3 a)
Fire alarm systems
  see Fire safety precautions

Fire engineering design ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.7, 1.4.1

Fire fighting facilities ................................................................. C/AS1 8.2

Fire hazard categories (FHC) ..................................................... C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.2.1, 3.12.2 d), 3.12.3 c), 3.15.2 b), 3.15.3 a), 4.2.3, 5.4.1 [j], 6.6.7, 6.20.7, 6.20.15 a), 6.21.5 a), 6.22.1, 7.1.3, 7.3.2 b), 7.5.2, 7.5.3 Step 4, 7.7.5 Step 5, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, 7.8.9 c) d), 7.10.5 a), Figures 3.19, 3.20, 1 and 7.10 Note 3,
  Tables 2.1, 5.1, 7.1 to 7.4

category 4 buildings ................................................................. C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, Table 2.1

Fire load energy density (FLED) ................................................ C/AS1 2.2.1 comments, 2.2.10, Table 5

Fire resistance ratings (FRR) ...................................................... C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 8, 1.3.4 Steps 4 and 6, 1.3.5 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.14.6 c), 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 5.1, 5.2, 5.9.5 a) b), 5.9.6, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.5 to 6.6.7, 6.7.1, 6.7.2, 6.7.5, 6.7.6, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.14, 6.15, 6.16.2, 6.17.2, 6.18.8, 6.19.14, 7.2.1, 7.4.3, 7.8.1 a), 7.8.2 to 7.8.6, 7.8.10 b) c), 7.9.3, 7.9.4, 7.9.8 b), 7.9.13, 7.10, C7.1.1, Figure 7.10, Table 6.1

application of F and S ratings ...................................................... C/AS1 5.3
  applying FRRs to building elements .......................................... C/AS1 5.7
  concessions for multiple purpose groups .................................. C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8
determining F and S ratings ......................................................... C/AS1 5.4, 5.5
determining the FRR ................................................................. C/AS1 5.6

fire resistance tests ................................................................. C/AS1 5.9.6, C7.1.1
firecell rating (F) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 4.4.1 Step 5, 4.5.7, 4.5.14, 5.2.2, 5.3.1, 5.4, 5.5.1, 5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 6.15.1, 6.16.2, 6.20.15, 6.21.1 a), 7.10.2, 7.10.3, Table 4.1
firecells rated F60 ............................................................................ C/AS1 6.2

floors ................................................................. C/AS1 3.14.6 c), 4.3.2, 5.6.4 d), 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.14, 6.15, 7.8.6
insulation rating ................................................................. C/AS1 5.1.1 c), 5.6.4 to 5.6.6, 5.8.10, 6.19.13, 7.8.1 a), Table 6.1 Notes
integrity rating ................................................................. C/AS1 5.1.1 b), 5.6.6, 5.8.2, 7.4.3
intermediate floors ................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.16, 6.14.3
minimum FRRs ................................................................. C/AS1 5.7.9
open sided buildings ................................................................. C/AS1 7.8.10 b) c), Figure 7.10
reductions for sprinklered firecells ........................................... C/AS1 5.6.6
roof .............................................................................................. C/AS1
small buildings ................................................................................. C/AS1 7.10.5
stability rating ................................................................................. C/AS1 5.1.1 a), 5.6.6, 5.9.4, 5.9.5
structural fire endurance rating (S) ............................................... C/AS1 2.2.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.3, 5.2.2, 5.3.2, 5.4, 5.5.2, 5.5.3, 5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 5.6.11, 6.10.5, 7.2.1, 7.4.3, 7.8.1 a), 7.8.5, 7.8.6, 7.10.2, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, Table 5.1

Fire resisting closures ............................................................. C/AS1 6.18.9, 6.19, C7.1.1, C8.1.1, Table 6.1
  access panels ................................................................. C/AS1 6.19.12
  fire curtains ................................................................................. C/AS1 6.19.10
  fire dampers ................................................................. C/AS1 6.3.2 fi, 6.16.4 d), 6.19.14
  fire doors see Doors
  fire shutters .................................................................................. C/AS1 6.19.15 to 6.19.17
  lift landing doors see Doors
  smoke control doors see Doors
Fire safety

see Means of Escape, Outbreak of Fire, Spread of Fire, Structural Stability during Fire

Fire safety precautions (FSP) ........................................... C/AS1 1.2.3, 1.3.2 Step 6, 2.3.1, 3.1.5, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.3.1, 4.4.1, 4.5, 5.6.8, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, Appendix A, Table 4.1
domestic (Type 1) ................................................................. C/AS1 A2.1.1
emergency electrical power supply ................................................. C/AS1 6.23.1 d), 6.23.3, 6.23.4, A2.1
emergency lighting (Type 16) .................................................. C/AS1 3.19.2, 6.23.3 c), 6.23.4, A2.1
emergency lighting in exitways .................................................. F7/AS1 1.5.2
fire alarm systems
activation of system ........................................................................ F7/AS1 2.1.1
automatic ......................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.2.3 to 1.2.7
heat detectors ....................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.3, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
high sensitivity smoke detection ....................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.7
installation and maintenance .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6,
manual (Type 2) .............................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1, F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
means of communication with the Fire Service
modified smoke detection .............................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.5 to 1.2.7
requirements ..................................................................................... F7/AS1 2.1
smoke detectors ................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
substitution of smoke detectors by heat detectors ......................... F7/AS1 1.3.5
fire hose reels (Type 14) ................................................................. C/AS1 8.2.2, A2.1
fire hydrant systems (Type 18) ...................................................... C/AS1 8.2.1, A2.1
Fire Service lift controls (Type 15) ................................................. C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1, F7/AS1 1.5.2
fire sprinklers (Type 6) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6,
3.18.7 a), 4.1.1 a), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 5.6.13,
6.3.2 a) d), 6.6.8, 6.16.7, 6.18.10,
6.19.9, A2.1, Appendix D, Figure 7.2
concessions for sprinklers ......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 c), 3.4.8 d), 3.5.2, 3.14.3, 3.15.3 a),
3.16.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.16.3 b), 4.2.5, 5.5.3, 5.6.6,
5.6.7 b), 5.6.8, 5.8.7, 5.8.8, 6.3.1, 6.5.1, 6.7.2,
6.9.6 d), 6.9.11, 6.10.5, 6.13.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.10,
6.20.15 a), 6.22.3 a), 7.2.2, 7.3.12, 7.7.6,
7.9.3, 7.9.10, 8.11 e), Tables 4.1 Note 5, 6.2
residential ......................................................................................... C/AS1 D3.1
with smoke detectors (Type 7) .................................................. C/AS1 3.12.2 b), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), A2.1
fire sprinkler systems
automatic ......................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.8, 1.3.2, 1.3.4
with smoke detectors ....................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.9
fire systems centre (Type 20) ...................................................... C/AS1 8.2.3, 8.2.4, A2.1
heat detectors (Type 3) ............................................................... C/AS1 3.5.3, 3.5.5, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11,
6.10.4 c), 6.11.3 b), A2.1
hold-open devices ............................................................................. F7/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2
manual (Type 2) .............................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1
mechanical smoke extract ............................................................ F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2
mechanical smoke extract (Type 11) .............................................. C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b),
6.22.7 c), 6.22.8 c), 6.22.11, 6.22.12,
6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6
modified smoke/heat detection (Type 5) ......................................... C/AS1 3.5.4, A2.1
natural smoke venting ...................................................................... F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2
natural smoke venting (Type 10) .................................................. C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b),
6.22.8 c), 6.22.10, 6.22.14, A2.1,
B3.1.1, Table 6.5
pressurisation of safe paths (Type 13) .......................................... C/AS1 3.7.1 b), 3.11.6 b), 6.9.6,
6.9.11, 6.13.1, 6.19.4 c), 6.21.2, 6.23.1 b),
A2.1, B1.1.1, Table 6.1 Note 2;
F7/AS1 1.3.7, 1.5.2
refuge areas (Type 19) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.13, A2.1, Figure 3.17
Fire safety precautions (FSP) (continued)

smoke control in air-handling systems ................................................................. C/AS1 6.23.2, A2.1, F7/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.3
smoke detectors ........................................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
smoke detectors (Type 4) ....................................................................................... C/AS1 3.5.4, 3.5.5, 3.12.2 b), 3.17.10, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g j, 6.22.14, 6.23.1, A2.1, B1.11

voice communication system (Type 8) ............................................................... C/AS1 3.16.3 d), 8.2.6, A2.1

Fire separations ....................................................................................................... C/AS1 1.3.5 b), 3.11.9, 4.11 a), 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 d) e), 5.6.3, 5.6.4 a), 5.6.5 c), 5.6.7, 5.7.2, 5.7.4, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.11.2, 6.12, 6.14.1, 6.14.4, 6.15.1 a), 6.17, 6.18.4, 6.18.7 to 6.18.10, 7.2.1, 7.2.2, Table 6.1

junctons .................................................................................................................. C/AS1 6.12.4 to 6.12.7, 6.12.9, 6.18.4, Figure 6.4

protected shafts ....................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.16, Figure 6.8

Fire Service ............................................................................................................. C/AS1 4.2.6 c), 5.9.3 f), 6.21.2, 6.22.12 b), Part 8, A2.1.1 Type 15 and Type 20;

see also Alerting the Fire Service

installation and maintenance .............................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3

manual ................................................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2

means of communication with .............................................................................. C/AS1 A1.3.1, A2.1.1 Type 2 and Type 7

requirements ......................................................................................................... F7/AS1 2.1

activation of system .............................................................................................. F7/AS1 2.1.1

smoke detectors ..................................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3

vehicular access ..................................................................................................... C/AS1 8.1.1, 8.1.2

Fire shutters

see Fire resisting closures

Fire spread

horizontal ................................................................................................................. C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 b), 7.3, 7.8
vertical ................................................................................................................... C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 a), 7.9

between different levels of the same building .................................................... C/AS1 7.9.10 to 7.9.15

external thermal insulation ................................................................................. C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.9.19, Figure 7.12

from an adjacent lower roof ............................................................................... C/AS1 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11

roof car parking and storage .............................................................................. C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17

Fire stopping ......................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.12.5, 6.12.7 a), 6.12.9, 6.17, 6.18.1, 6.18.4, C7.1.1, C7.1.2, Figures 6.4, 6.9 and 6.11

cavity barriers ..................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.6, Figure 6.12

curtain walls ......................................................................................................... C/AS1 7.9.14, Figure 6.11

external thermal insulation ................................................................................. C/AS1 7.9.18, Figure 7.12

hollow construction ............................................................................................. C/AS1 6.17.5, Figure 6.12

protected shafts ..................................................................................................... C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.3, 6.16.4 e), Figure 6.8

service outlets ..................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.17.6, Figure 6.9

Firecell rating (F)

see Fire resistance ratings

Firecells .................................................................................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5 to 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.3.5

basements .............................................................................................................. C/AS1 3.7, 4.5.15, 6.14.4

buildings remaining occupied during fire ............................................................ C/AS1 5.6.9, 5.6.10
car parking ........................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.10.3 to 6.10.6

ceiling space firecells ........................................................................................... C/AS1 6.12.8

concealed spaces .................................................................................................. C/AS1 6.18.2, 6.18.3

concessions for multiple purpose groups ............................................................. C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8

construction ........................................................................................................ C/AS1 6.12

fire hazard category 4 ............................................................................................ C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13

fire safety precautions

see Fire safety precautions

firecells rated F0 ................................................................................................... C/AS1 6.2

floor area limits ..................................................................................................... C/AS1 4.2.3 to 4.2.5

group sleeping areas ............................................................................................. C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.5

intermediate floors ............................................................................................... C/AS1 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3 to 6.21.6, Figure 6.6, Tables 6.5 and 6.6
Firecells (continued)

limited area atriums .......................................................... C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6
plant, boiler and incinerator rooms ................................................ C/AS1 6.11.3, 6.11.4
protected shafts ........................................................................ C/AS1 6.16
provision of firecells ........................................................................ C/AS1 4.2
roofs .......................................................................................... C/AS1 7.8.1 to 7.8.5, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9
solid waste storage ........................................................................ C/AS1 6.10.2
suites ..................................................................................... C/AS1 2.2.9, 3.15.5, 6.6.5, 6.7.6, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, A2.11.1 Type 5
top floor firecells .............................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.14

Fireplace .................................................................................. C/AS1 9.1 to 9.3, Figures 9.1 and 9.3, Table 9.1

Fire Safety .............................................................................. C/AS1, C/VM1

Fixings ................................................................................ C/AS1 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1,
9.4.4.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1,
Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40

Fixtures
sanitary fixtures 
see Personal Hygiene

Flame barriers .............................................................. C/AS1 3.14.6 b) c), 6.18.5 c), 6.20.12 a), 6.20.13, 6.20.14 b),
C10.1, Table 6.3

Flammability index (FI) ..................................................... C/AS1 C3.1, Table 6.2

Flammable liquids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 3 flammable liquids

Flammable solids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 4 flammable solids

Flashings .......................................................... E2/AS1 4.0, 8.2.4, 8.2.6, 8.3.8, 8.4.11, 8.4.11.1, 8.4.12, 9.6.7,
Tables 20-22, Figures 5 and 6
apron flashings ................................................................. E2/AS1 5.1, 8.4.12 b), Figures 7 and 43
durability requirements .................................................... E2/AS1 4.2.1
head flashings .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.4, Table 7
jamb flashings ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.6, Table 7
materials .............................................................................. E2/AS1 4.1.4.2, 4.2.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.3, 9.8.5
aluminium .......................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.2
aluminium-zinc coated steel .......................... E2/AS1 4.3.4
bituminous ........................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.10
butyl rubber ........................................................................ E2/AS1 4.3.9
bronze ............................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.6
EPDM ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.9
flexible flashing tape ...................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.11
galvanised steel .............................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.3
lead sheet ............................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.7
stainless steel ...................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.5
uPVC .................................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.1
zinc sheet ............................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.8
overlaps and upstands .................................................. E2/AS1 4.6
overlap with roof claddings ........................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1
apron flashing cover over metal roofing ................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.1
barges .................................................................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.5
change in metal roof pitches ........................................ E2/AS1 4.6.1.3
inter-storey junctions .................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.7
parallel flashing ............................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.1
ridges and hips ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.2
roof- or deck-to-wall junctions .......................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.4
transverse flashing ......................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.1
window heads ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.6
requirements ........................................................................... E2/AS1 4.5
dge treatments ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 5
metal flashing joins ......................................................... E2/AS1 4.5.2, Figure 6
Flats

see Housing, multi-unit dwelling

FLED

see Fire load energy density

Flooding

flood risk assessment .............................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.2
history of .................................................................................. E1/AS1 1.0.1
protection from ......................................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.2

Floors .................................................. NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (c), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2;

B1/AS2 2.1.1; E2/AS1 10.0; F7/AS1 1.1.2, G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3,

2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6

basement floors .......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 i, 3.15.2, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19
concealed spaces .............................................................. C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.5 a), 6.18.10
concrete slab-on-ground ................................................... E2/AS1 10.3.3
acceptable materials ......................................................... E2/AS1 10.3.4
damp-proof membranes (DPM) ............................................. E2/AS1 10.3.5, Table 18, Figure 3.5
finished floor levels ......................................................... E2/AS1 10.3.6
floor levels ............................................................................ E2/AS1 10.3.7, Figure 3.5
general ................................................................................ E2/AS1 10.3.8
protection from timber ...................................................... E2/AS1 10.3.9
fire resistance ratings ....................................................... C/AS1 3.14.6 c), 4.1.1 a), 4.3.2, 4.5.7, 5.3.1, 5.6.4 d),

5.6.8, 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.12.2, 6.14.2 to 6.14.4, 6.15.1
floor projections ................................................................. C/AS1 7.8.6, 7.9.13
flooring materials .............................................................. C/AS1 6.20.8, 6.20.14
intermediate floors ............................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, 4.5.16 to 4.5.18,

5.6.4 d), 5.6.5 b), 6.10.3, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3, 6.22,

A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, B4.1.1, Figures 3.9 and 6.6,

Tables 6.4 to 6.6

limited area intermediate floors ....................................... C/AS1 4.5.17, 6.21.4 a), 6.21.5, 6.21.6
lower floors ................................................................. C/AS1 3.16.9, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.7.7, 6.9.3, Figure 3.5
other floors in a building .................................................. C/AS1 4.5.8 to 4.5.11
same purpose group on different floors ......................... C/AS1 4.5.13
subfloor spaces ................................................................. C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
upper floors ................................................................. C/AS1 6.15.1, 6.18.5 a), Figure 6.7

wooden floors .............................................................. C/AS1 6.12.6, 6.20.14
floor/ceiling assemblies .................................................. G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3
floor/wall junctions ................................................................. G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
minimum floor level .......................................................... E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
moisture ................................................................................ NZBC/E2.3.4
slip resistant ......................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1 3.0.2
suspended timber floors ..................................................... E2/AS1 10.2
airflow .................................................................................. E2/AS1 10.2.6
general .................................................................................. E2/AS1 10.2.1
openings ............................................................................ E2/AS1 10.2.5
protection of timber .......................................................... E2/AS1 10.2.2
separation ............................................................................ E2/AS1 10.2.3, Figure 131
subfloor ventilation ............................................................. E2/AS1 10.2.4
vapour barriers in subfloor space ..................................... E2/AS1 10.2.7
installation ........................................................................ E2/AS1 10.2.7.2
minimum ventilation with vapour barrier ......................... E2/AS1 10.2.7.1

Floor outlets ........................................................................... G13/AS1 3.4

Floor wastes ........................................................................ E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4
Flues.................................................................................NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4; G11/AS1 5.0
fire damper ........................................................................NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4; G11/AS1 5.0
gas burning appliances.......................................................C/AS1 9.3
locations on dwellings.......................................................G4/AS1 2.4
materials .............................................................................G11/AS1 5.1
oil fired appliances..............................................................C/AS1 9.3
safety devices ......................................................................G11/AS1 5.2
solid fuel appliances...........................................................C/AS1 9.1
Foamed plastics building materials. ..................................C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.11 to 6.20.13, 7.9.18,
Figure 7.12, Table 6.3
Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination...........G3
cooking............................................................................NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1
energy supply .....................................................................NZBC/G3.3.3
location .............................................................................NZBC/G3.3.4
people with disabilities ....................................................NZBC/G3.3.5
preparation ........................................................................NZBC/G3.3.1 (b) (d), G3.3.2
prevention of contamination ............................................NZBC/G3.3.6
rinsing ...............................................................................G3/AS1 1.1.1
storage .............................................................................NZBC/G3.3.1 (a); G3/AS1 1.3.1
refrigeration .......................................................................G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.4.1
ventilation ..........................................................................G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4
surfaces .............................................................................G3/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, Figure 1
utensil washing .................................................................NZBC/G3.3.1 (b), G3.3.2
Foul Water...........................................................................G13
see also Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes,
Water seals, Water traps
gravity flow ........................................................................NZBC/G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2 (a)
odours .............................................................................NZBC/G13.1 (b), G13.3.1 (c), G13.3.2 (e); G13/AS1 3.1.1
offensive matter ...................................................................NZBC/G13.1 (b)
on-site disposal systems ......................................................NZBC/G13.3.4
see also Industrial Liquid Waste
outfalls ...............................................................................NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.2
personal hygiene ................................................................NZBC/G13.1 (a)
plumbing system ................................................................NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1
sewer ................................................................................NZBC/G13.3.3, G13.3.4, G15.3.3
three storey buildings .....................................................G13/AS1 Figure 7
Foundations.......................................................................B1/VM1 1.0.2, B1/VM4
see also Chimneys, foundations
design parameters
continuous vibration .........................................................B1/VM4 1.0.6
depth .................................................................................B1/VM4 2.0.4
ground stability .................................................................B1/VM4 1.0.4
long-term loading ..............................................................B1/VM4 2.0.6
short-term loading .............................................................B1/VM4 2.0.6
serviceability deformations ..........................................B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B
pile foundations .................................................................B1/VM4 4.0
belled piles .........................................................................B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2
bulbed piles ........................................................................B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)
concrete piles
cast-in-situ .........................................................................B1/VM4 3.4.4
precast ...............................................................................B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1
downdrag .........................................................................B1/VM4 4.5
nominal width .....................................................................B1/VM4 4.0.3, 4.2.2, 4.6.1
notation .............................................................................B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2
pile driving .........................................................................B1/VM4 5.1.1
pile driving formula ...........................................................B1/VM4 4.0.1
pile groups
design pile lateral strength ..............................................B1/VM4 4.0.4
design pile vertical strength ..............................................B1/VM4 4.0.4
ultimate lateral strength ..................................................B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3
ultimate vertical strength ..................................................B1/VM4 4.4.1
Foundations (continued)

single piles
  base resistance .............................................. B1/VM4 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
  column action .................................................... B1/VM4 4.2
  design pile lateral strength ..................................... B1/VM4 4.0.4
  design pile vertical strength .................................... B1/VM4 4.0.4
  lateral strength .................................................. B1/VM4 4.3
  drained cohesionless soil ......................................... B1/VM4 4.3.4
  free head pile .................................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
  restrained head pile ............................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
  undrained cohesive soil ........................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2
  undrained consolidated soil ...................................... B1/VM4 4.3.3
  shaft resistance ................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
  ultimate axial compression ...................................... B1/VM4 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
  vertical strength .................................................. B1/VM4 4.1.2
  strength reduction factors ...................................... B1/VM4 4.7, Table 4
  types
    concrete ......................................................... B1/VM4 5.1.1, 5.1.2
    steel ............................................................... B1/VM4 5.2.1, 5.2.2
    timber .............................................................. B1/VM4 5.3
  shallow foundations ............................................... B1/VM4 3.0
  design bearing pressure ......................................... B1/VM4 3.2.1, 3.2.4
  design bearing strength ......................................... B1/VM4 3.2.3
  design sliding resistance ......................................... B1/VM4 3.4.6
  local shear ........................................................ B1/VM4 3.3.3
  moment loading .................................................... B1/VM4 3.1.4
  notation ............................................................... B1/VM4 3.3.1, Figures 1 and 2
  soils ................................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3
  strength reduction factors ...................................... B1/VM4 3.6.
  surcharge ............................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.3
  ultimate bearing strength ....................................... B1/VM4 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
  ultimate sliding resistance ....................................... B1/VM4 3.4.2
  ultimate sliding strength ........................................ B1/VM4 3.4.4, 3.4.5

see also Chimneys, foundations

FRR
  see Fire resistance ratings

FSP
  see Fire safety precautions
G

Garages
see Outbuildings

Gas ................................................................. G3/AS1 1.4.1

Gas as an Energy Source ................................. G11
  automatic cut-offs ............................................ NZBC/G11.3.2
  flued appliances ............................................. NZBC/G11.3.3
  gas supply authority ........................................ NZBC/G11.3.6
  isolation devices ............................................ NZBC/G11.3.4
  meters .......................................................... NZBC/G11.3.6
  location ....................................................... G11/AS1 5.0
  over pressure protection .................................. G11/AS1 5.0
  safe pressure ranges ...................................... NZBC/G11.3.1
  service risers ................................................. NZBC/G11.3.6
  supply system .............................................. NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5

Gas burning appliances
  installation ..................................................... C/AS1 9.2
  seismic restraint ............................................ C/AS1 9.2.2

Gases
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 2 gases

Gas fuel appliances ........................................... G4/AS1 2.0, 3.0

Gas reticulation
  another Acceptable Solution ............................. G10/AS1 5.0
  cleaning ....................................................... G10/AS1 11.1
  tailpipes ....................................................... G10/AS1 1.1.3
  concealed piping .......................................... G10/AS1 1.4
  in concrete ................................................... G10/AS1 1.4.1
  in enclosed spaces ........................................ G10/AS1 1.4.2
  underground ................................................ G10/AS1 1.4.3, Table 3
  construction ................................................ G10/AS1 1.0
  corrosion control .......................................... G10/AS1 3.0
  design ......................................................... G10/AS1 1.0.1 a)
  installation ................................................... G10/AS1 1.2
    bends and offsets ......................................... G10/AS1 1.2.1 a)
    risers ........................................................ G10/AS1 1.2.1 c)
    separation .................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 b)
    supports .................................................... G10/AS1 1.2.1 a), Table 2
  isolating valves ............................................ G10/AS1 2.0
  materials ...................................................... G10/AS1 1.0.1 b), Table 1
  pipework in ducts ......................................... G10/AS1 1.5
  unventilated ducts ....................................... G10/AS1 1.5.4
  ventilated ducts .......................................... G10/AS1 1.5.3
  vent lines ................................................... G10/AS1 4.0, Tables 4 and 5
  welded joints ............................................... G10/AS1 1.3

Geology ................................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)

Glazing .......................................................... NZBC/F2.3.3; B1/AS1 7.0; C/AS1 5.8, 6.19.11
see also Hazardous Building Materials
  concession for sprinklers ................................. C/AS1 5.8.7, 5.8.8
  dimensions .................................................... C/AS1 5.8.3 to 5.8.5
  fire resisting glazing ...................................... C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 7.3.3 c),
  human impact safety ..................................... C/AS1 5.8.2 a)
  in external walls .......................................... C/AS1 5.8.2 a)
  in fire doors ............................................... C/AS1 5.8.10
  in fire separations ....................................... C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2
  in safe paths ................................................ C/AS1 5.8.1 c), 5.8.3 to 5.8.8, Figure 5.1
  in smoke control doors .................................. C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11
  in smoke separations and protected paths ......... C/AS1 5.8.9
  modifications to NZS 4223 ............................... F2/AS1 1.2
Government agencies ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Government offices ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Grease traps ........................................................................ G13/AS2 3.4
capacity ............................................................................. G13/AS2 3.4.3, 3.4.4

Ground
  good ground ........................................................................ B1/AS3 1.3.2

Ground conditions ................................................................. B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendix A

Groundwater ................................................................. B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendices A, B; G14/VM1 1.6.1
conditions ............................................................................. B1/VM4 1.0.2
seasonal changes ................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1
tidal changes ......................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1

Group sleeping areas ......................................................... C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.4

Gully traps ........................................................................... G13/AS1 Figures 5 and 7, G13/AS2 3.3, Figures 2 and 3
construction ........................................................................ G13/AS2 3.3.1, Figure 4
overflow relief ......................................................................... G13/AS2 3.3.2
pipe diameters ....................................................................... G13/AS2 3.3.1

Gutters ...................................................................................... E1/AS1 5.0
  gradients ........................................................................... E1/AS1 5.3
materials ............................................................................... E1/AS1 5.5
overflow outlets ..................................................................... E1/AS1 5.2, Table 6
sizing ..................................................................................... E1/AS1 5.1, Figures 15 and 16
thermal movement .............................................................. E1/AS1 5.4, Table 7

Gutters, barges, and fascias ............................................. E2/AS1 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.1.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64
internal gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.1.6.3, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
parallel hidden gutters ..................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
valley gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51
H

Habitable spaces............. NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2

Halls
see Communal non-residential

Halls of residence
see Communal residential

Handicapped people
see People with disabilities

Handrails ............................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (i); C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c); D1/AS1 1.5.2, G10.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 5.2.1 g), 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19

clearances ............................................................ D1/AS1 6.0.7, Figure 26
handrail profiles ............................................................. D1/AS1 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26
height ...................................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.6, Figure 25
horizontal extensions .......................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25
intermediate handrails .......................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.2
relevant width ............................................................. D1/AS1 6.0.4, Figure 26
slope ...................................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.4

Hazard to building elements ............................................................. F1/VM1 2.7

Hazardous Agents on Site ............................................................. F1
see also Site investigation
assessment of sites ....................................................................... NZBC/F1.3.1
contaminants ............................................................. F1/VM1 1.0.2 c, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2
2.6.3, Table 2
degradation of building materials .......................................................... F1/VM1 2.7
likely effects on people ............................................................. NZBC/F1.3.2
hazardous agents ............................................................. F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2
network utility operators ............................................................. F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)
remedial work ............................................................. F1/VM1 2.6, Table 3
risk assessment ....................................................................... F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4

Hazardous Building Materials ............................................................. F2
see also Glazing
asbestos ............................................................. F2/AS1 2.0
brittle materials ............................................................. NZBC/F2.3.3
harmful concentrations ............................................................. NZBC/F2.3.1
transparent panels ............................................................. NZBC/F2.3.2

Hazard category
see Fire hazard categories

Hazardous Substances and Processes ............................................................. F3
explosions ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (c)
food preparation and utensil washing areas ............................................................. NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)
hazardous substances associated
with building services ............................................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
protected ignition sources ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (d)
release of pressure ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (c)
released during fire ............................................................. NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10
rendering hazardous materials harmless ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (e)
signs ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (b)
surface finishes ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (f)
authorised access ............................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (a)

Hazardous wastes ............................................................. G14/VM1 1.3.2, 1.4.1 b), 1.9.1, 2.1.4, 2.2.1 b), 2.2.4, 2.3.7, 2.4.4, 3.1.3
Health camps
  see Communal residential

Hearths......................................................... B1/AS3 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3, C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.3
hearth slabs........................................................ B1/AS3 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3

Heat detectors
  see Fire safety precautions

Heat transfer solid fuel appliances
  limiting heat transfer...................................................... C/VM1 1.1

Heating
  see Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment

Height
  see Building height or Escape height

Height clearances .................................................. D1/AS1 1.4, 1.4.1, Figure 3, Table 1
Hobs.................................................................................. G3/AS1 1.2.1

Hospitals ........................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1 Table 4
  see also Communal residential

Hostels
  see Communal residential

Hot dip galvanising.................................................. B1/AS2 1.0.5 b), B1/AS3 1.8.6
Hot plates........................................................................... G3/AS1 1.2.1

Hot water supply
  see Water supplies, hot

Hotels.............................................................................. D1/AS1 9.1.1
  see also Communal residential

Household units............................................................ C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6 b) c) e), 2.2.9 a), 3.11.6, 3.15.5, 3.15.8,
  3.20.1, 6.11.1, 6.8.1, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.5.7, 7.9.19,
  7.10.6, 7.10.7, A2.1.1 Type 5, Table 6.2; F7/AS1 1.1.2 b),
  1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.2, G6/AS1 1.0.2

Housing................................................ NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.2 (a) to (d),
  G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F4/AS1 Table 1;
  G3/AS1 1.0; G9/AS1 1.0; H1/VM1 1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0
  detached dwellings ........................................... NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3,
  F8.2, G15.2, H1/VM1 1.1
group dwellings................................................ NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2, H1/VM1 1.1.1
multi-unit dwellings........................................... NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (ii), F6.2, F8.2,
  G8.2, G15.2, H1/VM1 1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.1
wharenui................................................................. H1/VM1 1.1.1

HVAC systems......................................................................... F7/AS1 1.5.3
Identification of non-potable water supply ...................................................... G12/AS1 4.2.1
see also Water supplies

Illuminance .................................................. G7/VM1 1.0; G8/VM1 1.0, G8/AS1 1.0
measurement ............................................................ G8/VM1 1.0.1
minimum ............................................................ G6/AS1 1.0.3

Impact insulation class (IIC). ......................................................... G6/VM1 2.0

In-service history ................................................ B2/VM1 1.1

Industrial buildings ................................................................. NZBC/A1 6.0, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, E3.3.1, G1.3.5, G3.2.1,
G3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G8.2, G9.3.4, G12.3.9,
H1.2 (a); G1/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0.2

Industrial Liquid Waste .................................................... G14

capacity ................................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)
collection ............................................................... G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.3.2, 1.4
location of facilities ........................................................ G14/VM1 1.4

corrosion .............................................................. G14/VM1 2.3, Table 2
pumps ................................................................. G14/VM1 2.4, Figure 2
disposal .............................................................. G14/VM1 1.1.1, Table 1

to a natural waterway ...................................................... G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)
to a sewer ........................................................... G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2

disposal systems .................................................... NZBC/G14.3.1

hazardous wastes
see Hazardous wastes

materials used in construction ............................................. G14/VM1 1.5.1

odours ................................................................. NZBC/G14.3.1 (c), G14.3.2 (f)

resource consents ........................................................ NZBC/G14.3.2 (d)
safety facilities ........................................................ G14/VM1 3.1.4

separate waste systems ..................................................... G14/VM1 1.7.1

storage ................................................................. G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 c), 1.3.2

tanks ................................................................. NZBC/G14.3.1

location of facilities ...................................................... G14/VM1 1.4

see Tanks
treatment ........................................................... G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2.2, 1.2.2, 1.3.2, Figure 1, Table 1
location of facilities ...................................................... G14/VM1 1.4

types ................................................................. G14/VM1 1.2, Table 1

unauthorised access ...................................................... NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1 1.9

vehicle access ...................................................... NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)

Inspection chambers
see Maintenance access to drains

Inspection points
see Maintenance access to drains

Insulation
see Fire resistance ratings

Integrity
see Fire resistance ratings

Intellectually handicapped persons
see People with disabilities

Intended Life
see Durability
Intended use ...................................................... NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, D1.3.5 (a), E3.3.5, F1.3.2 (a), F3.3 (f), F4.3.2, G2.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (b), G9.2, G11.1 (c), G11.2, G12.3.5, G15.2

Interface with ancillary control systems ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.5

**Interior Environment**

- accessible reception areas ......................................................... NZBC/G5.3.4
- adequate activity space ................................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b)
- see also Activity space
- enhanced listening systems ......................................................... NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6
- internal temperature ................................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
  - G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2
- unsafe installations ................................................................. NZBC/G5.1 (c), G5.2.2, G5.3.2

**Interior lighting**

- see Artificial Light

**Interior linings**

- ceilings ....................................................................................... G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2
- floors ......................................................................................... G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3
- walls .......................................................................................... G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3 to 2.3.6

**Interior surfaces**

- ............................................................................................... G7/AS1 1.0.2 to 1.0.4, Table 1

**Intermediate floors**

- see Floors

**Internal Moisture**

- concealed spaces ................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.6; E3/AS1 3.2.2
- condensation .............................................................................. E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.1.5, 1.3
- condensation channels ............................................................. E3/AS1 1.3
- energy efficiency ........................................................................ E3/AS1 1.1.5
- floor surfaces .............................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.3, E3.3.5
- free water overflow ................................................................. NZBC/E3.2 (b), E3.3.2
- fungal growth ............................................................................. NZBC/E3.2 (a), E3/AS1 1.0.1
- overflow ...................................................................................... E3/AS1 2.0
- containment ................................................................................ E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1
- floor waste .................................................................................. E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2
- people with disabilities .............................................................. E3/AS1 3.3.2
- steel framing .............................................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
- thermal break .............................................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
- thermal resistance ................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.1
- materials and installation ......................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.3
- ventilation .................................................................................. E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2
- wall surfaces .............................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.4, E3.3.5
- watersplash ................................................................................ E3/AS1 3.0
- basins ......................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
- baths ........................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
- joints in linings .......................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2
- lining materials ........................................................................... E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
- showers ....................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
- sinks ............................................................................................ E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
- tubs ............................................................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
- urinals .......................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.6
- windows ....................................................................................... E3/AS1 1.3.1

**Isolating valves** .............................................................................. G12/AS1 3.7.1, 5.4.2
J

Jetties
see Ancillary buildings

K

Kerbs ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.5.4 a), Figure 6
see also Ramps

Kindergartens
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens
see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination

Kitchen sinks ......................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

L

Laboratory testing ........................................ B2/VM1 1.2

Ladders ............................................................ D1/AS1 5.0
see also Stairs and ladders
height ................................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.2, 5.1.7
individual rung-type ladders ................................ D1/AS1 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24
  clearance ........................................................ D1/AS1 5.4.1 c
  height ............................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 c
  rungs ............................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 a)
  tread width .................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
  width ............................................................. D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
landings ........................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.2
  length ........................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.5, 5.1.7
  width ............................................................ D1/AS1 5.1.4
location ............................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.3
  rung spacing .................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.6
  rung-type ladders ........................................... D1/AS1 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20
    clearances ................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 e)
    height ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 d)
    landings ..................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.2, Figure 23
    rungs ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 b)
    slope ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 a)
    width ........................................................ D1/AS1 5.3.1 c)
safety enclosures ............................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
step-type ladders ................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19
  clearances ................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 e)
  height ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 d)
  horizontal openings ....................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 f)
  slope .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 a)
  treads ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 b)
  width ......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 c)
  types of ladders ............................................. D1/AS1 5.1.1

Landings .......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (l)

Landslip ............................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)
Laundering ................................................. G2; NZBC/G2.2, G2.3.1 to G2.3.4; G2/AS1 1.0

-electricity supply ................................................................. G2/AS1 1.1.2
-laundry tubs ................................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G2/AS1 1.0.1 a), 1.0.2, 1.1.1;
-G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2
-alternative solution ................................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.3
-capacity ............................................................................... G2/AS1 1.0.2 a)
-size .................................................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.2 b)
-minimum dimensions .......................................................... G2/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 1
-number of facilities ................................................................ G2/AS1 1.3.1, Table 1
-overflow ................................................................................ N/ZBC/E3.3.2
-people with disabilities ................................................... NZBC/G2.3.4, G2/AS1 1.2.2, Figure 2
-washing machines ............................................................. G2/AS1 1.0.1 b), 1.1.2
-water supply ........................................................................ G2/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2

Lavatories

-see Personal Hygiene


Level access routes .............................................................. D1/AS1 2.0

-protection from falling .......................................................... D1/AS1 2.3
-slip resistance ..................................................................... D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2
-width ................................................................................ D1/AS1 2.2

Libraries

-see Communal non-residential

Lifts ....................................................................................... C/AS1 3.12.3, 6.16.1, 6.16.4 b) c), 6.23.3 b) ; D1/AS1 12.0

-see also Mechanical Installations for Access

-doors .................................................................................. C/AS1 6.19.13, Table 6.1
-Fire Service lift control .......................................................... C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1.1 Type 15
-lift motor room ................................................................. C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.4 c)
-lift shafts
-see Protected shafts

Light

-see Artificial Light, Natural Light, Lighting for Emergency

-Light switches ................................................................. G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)

-Lighting of access routes .................................................. D1/AS1 1.5.4, 1.8

Lighting for Emergency .............................................................. F6; NZBC/H1.3.5

duration of illuminance .......................................................... NZBC/F8.3.3 (b); F6/AS1 1.1.3
-minimum illuminance .......................................................... NZBC/F6.3.1, G8.3
-generators ........................................................................ F6/AS1 1.1.6
-illuminance – verification methods ........................................ F6/VM1 1.1
-installation ......................................................................... F6/AS1 1.1.2
-location ............................................................................... F6/AS1 1.1.1
-maintenance ...................................................................... F6/AS1 1.1.5

Limited area atriums ................................................................. C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6

Limited area intermediate floors

-see Floors

Liquid fuel

-see Piped Services, Hazardous Substances and Processes

Loadings

-see Design, loadings

Loads

-see Structure, loads

Location of heat and smoke detectors ....................................... F7/AS1 1.3

Low-risk areas ....................................................................... F4/AS1 1.2.2
M

Maintenance ......... NZBC/B2.3.1, D2.3.1 (f), D2.3.4 (c), E1.3.3 (d), E2/AS1 2.5, G10.3.6, G11.3.4, G12.3.6 (d) (e), G13.3.1 (d), G13.3.2 (d), G14.3.2 (h), G15.3.2 (c);

normal ............................................................................................................ E2/AS1 2.5.1
regular maintenance ............................................................................. E2/AS1 2.5.1
scheduled ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 2.5.1

Maintenance access to drains ........................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.7
access chambers ..................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12;
G13/AS2 Figure 12
access points ......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, G13/AS2 5.7, Figures 9 to 12
inspection chambers ................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11;
G13/AS2 Figure 11
inspection points ..................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), G13/AS2 5.7, Figure 9
location ........................................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.7.4
rodding points ......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10, G13/AS2 5.7.4 f), Figure 10

Marae
see Housing, group dwellings

Masonry
see Design, masonry
masonry buildings .................................................................................... B1/AS3 1.1.1

Masonry tiles .............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2
anti-ponding boards ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.5
details and flashings ............................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.6, Figures 23-28
flashings and fixings ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.4, Tables 20-22
general ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.2
installation ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.3, Tables 10 and 23
materials .................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.1
tile profiles ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.1.1
penetrations ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2.7, Figures 29-31

Masonry veneer ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, 9.2, Table 18
bottom of masonry veneer ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.7
concrete bricks .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.5, Figure 73
clay bricks ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.4
clay bricks ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.4.1, Figure 73
general ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.2.2
installation ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.3, Table 23
limitations ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.1
secondary cladding .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.8
windows and doors .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.6

Means of Escape
see Escape routes, Evacuation time, Exitways, Final exits,
Fire hazard category, Open paths, Safe paths, Safe place, Travel distance

Mechanical Installations for Access ............................................................ D2
control system .......................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.1 (e)
emergency conditions ............................................................................ NZBC/D2.3.3
escalators .................................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3 (e)
lights ......................................................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.2 (c), D1.3.4 (c); D1/AS1 12.0
lighting ...................................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.2 (c)
loads .......................................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.1 (a)
location of potentially dangerous equipment ........................................ NZBC/D2.3.4
people with disabilities ......................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.5
servicing mechanical installations ......................................................... NZBC/D2.1 (b)
Mechanical ventilation

see Ventilation

Medical consultancy rooms

see also Communal non-residential

Membrane cappings

E2/AS1 6.5

Metal cappings

E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.1, Figure 9

Membrane roofs and decks

E2/AS1 8.5

gutters

E2/AS1 8.5.2

installation

E2/AS1 8.5.5

butyl and EPDM

E2/AS1 8.5.5.2

plywood

E2/AS1 8.5.5.1

junctons

E2/AS1 8.5.7, Figures 57, 58 and 61-63

with walls

E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62

penetrations

E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60

handrails

E2/AS1 8.5.9.1

plywood substrates

E2/AS1 8.5.3

butyl and EPDM

E2/AS1 8.5.4

roof and deck drainage

E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56, 57 and 62-64

Mixing devices

see Water supply, hot

Moisture

see External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water

Motels

D1/AS1 9.1.1

see also Communal residential

Municipal offices

NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)

see also Commercial buildings

Museums

see Communal non-residential
N

Natural Light ........................................................................................................................ G7
  awareness of the outside environment .......................................................... NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2
  minimum illuminance .................................................................................... NZBC/G7.3.1

Natural ventilation
  see Ventilation

Network utility operators .......... NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1 2.1.1 f) G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2

No-sky line condition ................................................................. G7/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3

Non-potable water supply
  see Water supply

Non-return valves ................................................................. G12/AS1 Figures 7 to 10, Table 6

Notional boundary ........................................... C/AS1 7.3.13 to 7.3.15, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.7.1, Table 7.4

Nurses’ or Nursing homes
  see Communal residential
Obstructions .............................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5

dangerous projections ........................................ D1/AS1 1.5.4, Figure 7
isolated columns .................................................. D1/AS1 1.5.5, Figure 5
major projections ............................................... D1/AS1 1.5.3, Figure 4
minor projections .............................................. D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2, Figure 4

Occupants ............................................................ NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)
occupant densities .......................................... C/AS1 2.3.3, 3.4.5 b), Table 2.2
occupant load .................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.2 a), 2.1.1
occupant loads – specific requirements
and limitations .............................................. C/AS1 2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.5, 3.4.8 c), 3.6.1 a) d), 3.9.11, 3.9.12 b) e), 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.12.2 b), 3.15.1 d), 3.16.3 c), 3.17.9 a) Step 1 and Step 2, 4.5.15, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.4.1, 6.20.6 a), 6.20.7 a), 6.20.19, 6.21.5 c), 6.22.2 c) d) f), B4.1.1, Tables 3.1 and 4.1

Occupied spaces ............................................. C/AS1 3.2.1, 3.3.2 d), 6.6.7, 6.7.4, 6.22.3, Tables 2.1 and 6.2:
G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a), G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)

Odours see Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Offices
see Commercial buildings

Oil fired appliances
installation .......................................................... C/AS1 9.3
seismic restraint .............................................. C/AS1 9.3.2

Old people’s homes ........................................ NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b), G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4;
G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1;
G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3

see also Communal residential buildings

Open fires ......................................................... C/AS1 9.5, Figures 9.1 and 9.3

Open paths ........................................................ F8/AS1 3.1.1 a)

see Escape routes

Opening windows ................................................ F4/AS1 2.0

Other property ................................................. C/AS1 4.3.2, 5.3.2 d), 6.1.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 b), 7.3.15 a), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.6 b), 7.9.10 d), Tables 6.1 and 7.3

Outbuildings ..................................................... NZBC/A1 7.0. D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i), G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; G1/AS1 Table 4

Outdoor air supply ........................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 a), d)

Ovens
see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, cooking

Overflow ............................................................ E3/AS1 2.0
containment ...................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1
floor waste ...................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2
P

Parapets .......................................................... E2/AS1 6.0, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.7.8, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, 9.6.9.8

Capping materials .................................................. E2/AS1 6.3

General .............................................................. E2/AS1 6.2

Limitations .......................................................... E2/AS1 6.1

Integral surface cappings ........................................ E2/AS1 6.6

Membrane cappings ............................................... E2/AS1 6.5

Metal cappings ...................................................... E2/AS1 6.4, Figure 9

Parapet-to-wall junctions ........................................ E2/AS1 6.4.1, Figures 11-13

Pedestrians

see Access Routes

Penetrations ....................................................... C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.12.4, 6.12.9 d), 6.16.4 e), 6.17.1, 6.17.4,

6.17.5, 6.17.7, 6.18.6 c), 6.18.9, 6.20.13 a)

People with disabilities ........................................... NZBC/F8.3.4; C/AS1 2.4, 3.15.1 e), 3.17.1 e);

D1/AS1 1.1.4, G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, Figures 5 to 9,

Tables 1 and 2; G2/AS1 1.2.2, Figure 2; G3/AS1 1.5.2;

G5/AS1 3.0; G9/AS1 2.0; G12/AS1 8.0

Accessible route identification .................................. F8/AS1 5.0.1 a) b)

Accessible routes .................................................. G1/AS1 4.1.1

Electrical installations ............................................. NZBC/G9.3.4

Enhanced listening systems .................................... NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6

Facility identification ............................................. F8/AS1 5.0.1 b)

Food preparation and cooking facilities .................. NZBC/G3.3.5

Information and warning signs ............................... NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4

Listening system identification .................................. F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7

Mechanical installations for access

see Mechanical Installations for Access

Personal hygiene facilities ..................................... NZBC/G1.3.5

 Provision of laundering facilities ............................. NZBC/G2.3.4

Usable water taps .................................................. G12/AS1 Figure 18

Water supply ......................................................... NZBC/G12.3.9

Pergolas

see Decks and Pergolas

Personal Hygiene ................................................... G1; NZBC/G13.1 (a)

see also Sanitary fixtures

Absence of facilities ............................................. NZBC/G1.1 (b)

Access to facilities ................................................ NZBC/D1.3.3 (e), G1.3.5

Location of facilities ............................................. NZBC/G1.3.4

Non-water-borne disposal system ............................ NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)

Overflows from sanitary fixtures ............................ NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4

People with disabilities ......................................... NZBC/G1.3.5; G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2

Privacy .................................................................. G1/AS1 6.0

Cubicles .............................................................. G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11

Line of sight ........................................................ G1/AS1 6.1, Figure 10

Lobbies ............................................................... G1/AS1 6.3

Unisex facilities .................................................... G1/AS1 1.1.5

Privies ................................................................ G1/AS1 5.0.2

Water-borne disposal system ................................. NZBC/G1.3.2 (g), G13.1 (b)

Piles

see Foundations

---

198

25 May 2007  DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING AND HOUSING
Piped Services ....................................................................................................................... G10

extreme temperatures ........................................................................................................... NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
gas pipes ................................................................................................................................. NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.2
hazardous substances .......................................................................................................... NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
identification of piping systems ........................................................................................ NZBC/G10.3.4
isolating devices ..................................................................................................................... NZBC/G10.3.6
piping systems ..................................................................................................................... NZBC/G10.3.1
preventing sound transmission ........................................................................................... G6/AS1 1.0.1 c
protection against corrosion ............................................................................................... NZBC/G10.3.3

Pipes

see also Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes

installation ............................................................................................................................. G11/AS1 4.0
joining methods ..................................................................................................................... G13/AS1 6.1.1
materials ............................................................................................................................... G13/AS1 2.1.1, Table 1
sizing ...................................................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.0
pressure ranges .................................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.1
flow velocities ....................................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.4
pressures above 1.5 kPa ...................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.3
pressures below 1.5 kPa ....................................................................................................... G11/AS1 1.2
supports ................................................................................................................................ G13/AS1 6.2.1, Table 7
thermal movement .............................................................................................................. G13/AS1 6.3
watertightness ....................................................................................................................... G13/AS1 7.0

Placement of detectors ........................................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.4

Places of assembly ................................................................................................................. D1/AS1 8.0

see also Communal non-residential

Plumbing systems

see Foul Water

Plywood sheet .......................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8

corners .................................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.4

external................................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.4.1, Figure 122

Internal ............................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.4.2, Figure 123

finishes .................................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.9

flushing material ................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.5, Tables 20-22

installation .............................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.3, Table 23

fixings ................................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.3.1, Table 24

joints .................................................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.3.2, Figures 118-121

limitations .............................................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.1

materials ................................................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.2, Figures 118 and 119

parapets and enclosed balustrades ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.7

soffit details ............................................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.6, Figure 114

windows and doors .............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.8

windows: direct fixed ........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8.1, Figure 115

windows: with cavity ........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8.2, Figure 116

Pools

see Swimming pools

Positive and negative pressure ........................................................................................... G4/AS1 1.3.3

Potable water supply

see Water Supplies
Pressed metal tiles ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3
barges .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figure 8
fascias .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figure 8
fixings .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.7
flashings ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
gutters .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.3
installation ........................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.2
limitations ........................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.1, Figure 37
metal substrate ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4
aluminium ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.4.3
choice of metal ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.1, Table 20
steel ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.2
roof penetrations ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.10, Figures 53 and 55
roof pitch .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.5, Figure 32
tiles ....................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.3
underlay .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.6, Table 23
Pressure limiting valves ...................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 c), Figure 8, Table 6
Pressure reducing valves ..................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
Pressure regulators ................................................................ G11/AS1 2.1
Pressure relief valves ............................................................ G12/AS1 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
installation ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.6.5
relief valve drains ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
Pressurisation of safe paths
see Fire safety precautions
Principal entrance ........................................................................ D1/AS1 1.1
Prisons
see Communal residential
Privacy
see Personal Hygiene
Privies
see Personal Hygiene, privies
Profiled metal roof claddings .................................................. E2/AS1 8.4
allowance for expansion ..................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles ........................... E2/AS1 8.4.8, Figure 39
requirements ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.8.1, Tables 14 and 15
fixings: trough profile ........................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.9, Figure 40
requirements ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.9.1
flashing details ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
flashing requirements .......................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
fixing flashings ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
general ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.2
internal gutters .................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
limitations ........................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.1
materials ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.3
aluminium ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.3.3
choice of metal ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.3.1, Table 20
steel ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.3.2
parallel hidden gutters ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
profile closure ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.15
profiles ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.4, Figure 38
roof penetrations ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
roof pitch .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.5
stopends .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.13, Figure 49
structure ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.6, Tables 11, 12 and 13
turn-downs at gutters ........................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.14
underlay .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.7, Table 23
valley gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51
Profiled metal wall claddings .................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.6, Table 3
(horizontal and vertical)
fixings ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.6, Table 20, Figure 39
flashings ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.7, Figures 5 and 6, Table 21
general ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.2
horizontal profiled metal on cavity .............................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9
barges .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.4, Figure 97
bottom of cladding ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.5, Figure 98
corner .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.2, Table 23
installation ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.3, Figure 96
parapets and balustrades .................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.8, Figures 101 and 102
penetrations .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.6, Figures 53 and 69
windows ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.7, Figures 99 and 100
limitations ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.6.1, Figure 38
maintenance ............................................................ E2/AS1 9.6.4
materials ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.3
aluminium ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.3.1, Table 20
choice of metal .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.3.2
steel ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.5
profiles ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.5.1, Table 38
vertical profile – direct fixed .............................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8
barges .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.2, Figure 92
bottom of cladding ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.3, Figure 93
corners .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.4, Figure 94
installation ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.1, Table 23
penetrations .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.5, Figures 53 and 69
windows ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100

Protected paths
see Escape routes

Protected shafts .................................................... C/AS1 6.10.4 a), 6.12.4, 6.16, Figure 6.8

Protecting other property
see Spread of Fire, Internal Moisture, Water Supplies

Protection of gas supply .......................................................... G11/AS1 7.0
contamination ........................................................................ G11/AS1 7.1
low pressures .......................................................................... G11/AS1 7.2

Protection of water supplies ..................................................... G12/AS1 3.4
air gaps ..................................................................................... G12/AS1 3.5
backflow prevention devices .................................................... G12/AS1 3.6
atmospheric vacuum breakers .............................................. G12/AS1 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
double check valves ............................................................ G12/AS1 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
pressure vacuum breakers .................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
reduced pressure zone devices .............................................. G12/AS1 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
cross connections .................................................................. G12/AS1 3.1, 3.2
hazard ..................................................................................... G12/AS1 3.3
testing ..................................................................................... G12/AS1 3.7

Purpose groups.......................... C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.1.3, 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 3.4.2 b), 4.2.7 a) c), 4.5.1, 4.5.2,
4.5.8, 4.5.13, 5.8.4, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6, 7.11.3, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 4.1,
6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5, F6/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.4, Table 2.1
active purpose groups ................................................. C/AS1 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.4.1 Step 2, Table 4.1
concessions for multiple purpose groups ......................... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.11
fire hazard category 4 ....................................................... C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11
primary purpose group .................................................. C/AS1 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.2.7, 4.2.7 c), 4.4.1 Step 1, 4.5.5,
6.10.1, 6.11.1, 6.11.2
residential community care ................................................ C/AS1 2.4
sleeping purpose groups ................................................. C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5, 4.4.1 Step 2, 4.5.11,
5.3.2 a), 5.7.9, 6.1.2 b), 7.1.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.16,
7.10.5 c), A1.2.1 Type 16, Tables 4.1 and 7.4
Purpose groups (continued)

CL ............... C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.16.1, 3.16.3, 3.16.7, 3.17.1 c), 3.17.9 a), 6.3, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.18 d), 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
CM ............. C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.17.1 c), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
CO .............. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
CS .............. C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Cm ............. C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co ........................ C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
Cs ............. C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Cm .................... C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
Co .................. C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; F7/AS1 1.3.5 b)
QR

Q

Qualifications ................................................. E2/AS1 1.5, 8.2.2, 8.4.2, 8.5.2, 9.2.2, 9.3.4.1, 9.6.2, 9.9.2

R

Radioactive substances

see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 7

Ramps .................................................. C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, D1/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 3.0
accessible ramps ........................................ D1/AS1 3.1.3, 6.0.3 to 6.0.4, Figure 9
slopes ................................................................ D1/AS1 Table 3
width ........................................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.2
intermediate landings ........................................ D1/AS1 3.3.1, Table 5
length ................................................................................. D1/AS1 3.3.3
width ........................................................................... D1/AS1 3.3.2
kerb ramps................................................................. D1/AS1 3.4, Figure 10
landings ........................................................................... D1/AS1 3.3, Figure 25
service ramps ......................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.2, Figure 8, Table 4
slip resistance .......................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.4, Table 2
slopes ........................................................................... D1/AS1 3.1, 3.1.1

Recirculated air systems ........................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 e)

Reflectances .................................................. G7/AS1 Table 2
high ................................................................................. G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1
medium ............................................................................ G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1

Refuge areas

see Fire safety precautions

Refuse

see Solid waste

Reinforcing steel ........................................... B1/AS3 1.3.2 b) c), 1.4, 1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.8.5, 2.2.1 a), Table 1

Relevant boundaries ........................................ C/AS1 2.2.8, 5.3.2 a), 5.4.1 g), 5.7.6 a), 5.9.4 c), 7.1.2 d),
7.3.1 b), 7.3.4 to 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.12 b), 7.3.15 a),
7.4.2, 7.5 to 7.8, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, 7.11.4, Figures 7.3,
7.7 to 7.9, Tables 7.1 to 7.5

Relief valve drains

see Cold water expansion valves, Temperature relief valves,
Temperature/pressure relief valves

Retaining walls .................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.5

Retirement villages

see Communal residential

Rodding points

see Maintenance access to drains

Roof claddings .................................................. E2/AS1 3.2, 8.0
general ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.1
fixings ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.4, Table 20
gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6, Figure 20
hidden gutters ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.1
tunnel gutters ............................................................ E2/AS1 8.1.6.1
valley gutters ............................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.1.6.2, Table 8
limitations ............................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.2
maintenance .......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.3
projecting eaves ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.3.1
Roof claddings (continued)

roof penetrations .......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.7, Tables 9 and 17, Figures 21 and 22
underlays ........................................................................ E2/AS1 8.1.5, Table 23
underlay support ............................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.5.1
weather tightness ............................................................ E2/AS1 8.1.1

Roof/wall junctions ........................................................ E2/AS1 5.0
apron flashings .............................................................. E2/AS1 5.1, Table 7, Figure 7
barges ............................................................................. E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8
fascias ............................................................................ E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8
gutters ........................................................................... E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8

car parking and storage .................................................. C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
eaves and projections (fire safety) .................................... C/AS1 2.2.8, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5
exterior surface finishes ................................................ C/AS1 7.11.1
fire spread ................................................................. C/AS1 7.1.1, 7.9.1, 7.9.2
fire venting ............................................................... C/AS1 4.2.4, 5.4.1 i), 5.5.3, 6.3.2 b) i), 7.8.10 a)
open sided buildings .................................................. C/AS1 7.8.8, 7.8.9, 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
roof spaces ................................................................. C/AS1 6.12.8, 6.18.5 b), c), 6.18.7, 6.18.8, 6.18.10

Rubbish chutes

see Solid Waste

Run-off

estimation of run-off ........................................................ E1/VM1 2.0
Rational Method .......................................................... E1/VM1 2.0.1
rainfall intensity ......................................................... E1/VM1 2.2, E1/AS1 Appendix A
run-off coefficient ...................................................... E1/VM1 2.1, Table 1
slope correction ......................................................... E1/VM1 2.1.3, Table 2
time of concentration .............................................. E1/VM1 2.2.1, 2.3
alternative procedure ............................................... E1/VM1 2.3.6, 2.3.7
catchment slopes ..................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.7
open channel flow .................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.5
pipe flow ................................................................. E1/VM1 2.3.4, Table 1
time of entry ............................................................ E1/VM1 2.3.2
overland flow .......................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
road channel flow ................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
time of network flow ............................................. E1/VM1 2.3.3
S

S rating  
see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths  
F7/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.4; F8/AS1 3.2.3 b)  
see also Escape routes

Safe place  
NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.22.7,  
A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

Safe trays  
see Storage water heaters

Safe water temperatures  
see Water Supplies, hot

Safety from Falling  
NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.22.7,  
A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

Safety from Falling  
NZBC/F4.2; G1/AS1 8.0.1, Table 1;  
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

Sanitary appliances  
NZBC/G13.2; G12/AS1 8.0.1, Table 1;  
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures  
NZBC/G13.2; G12/AS1 8.0.1, table 1;  
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

see also Basins, Bidets, Personal Hygiene, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

see also Basins, Bidets, Personal Hygiene, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

acceptable standards ................................................. G1/AS1 2.6

access pans ................................................................. G1/AS1 4.2.7

people with disabilities .............................................. G1/AS1 1.2.2, 4.1

basins ........................................................................... G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1

bidets ........................................................................... G1/AS1 2.4

communal sanitary fixtures ........................................... G1/AS1 3.4

construction and installation ....................................... G1/AS1 2.0

locations ..................................................................... G1/AS1 3.0, 4.2.1

non-flushing sanitary fixtures ..................................... G1/AS1 5.0

privies .......................................................................... G1/AS1 5.0.2

number of fixtures required ........................................ G1/AS1 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4


sanitary towel disposal .............................................. G1/AS1 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2

showers ...................................................................... G1/AS1 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2

soil fixtures ................................................................. G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1

space dimensions ...................................................... G1/AS1 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9

see also WC pans

toilets ........................................................................... G1/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

types of fixtures required .......................................... G1/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING AND HOUSING 25 May 2007

NEW ZEALAND BUILDING CODE HANDBOOK
Sanitary fixtures (continued)

urinals ........................................................................................ G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
bowl urinals ................................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals ............................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system ....................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.2
flushing systems ........................................................................ G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated ....................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.8
stall urinals .................................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes ......................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.4
through urinals ......................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Sanitation
see Personal Hygiene

Schools
see Communal non-residential

SDI
see Smoke developed index

Seating.............. C/AS1 2.3.5, 3.3.2 k), 3.3.6 c), 3.9.3, 3.9.4, 3.9.7 to 3.9.11, 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Tables 2.2 and 3.4
open air auditoriums (purpose group CO) .................................... C/AS1 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1

Seats on decks............................................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6

Security.......................................................... NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1 1.9, G14/AS1 1.1

Serviceability limit states
see Structure, limit states

Services and facilities
see Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Sewers
see Foul Water

SFI
see Spread of flame index

Sheds
see Outbuildings

Shops
see Commercial buildings

Showers...................... E3/AS1 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; G1/AS1 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2; G13/AS1 Table 2

Shrinkage
see Structure, loads

Signs................................................................. F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d);
C/AS1 3.3.6 a), 3.17.11 d), D1/AS1 1.1.1

escape routes................................................................. NZBC/F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a)
ext ......................................................................................... F8/AS1 3.0
alternative exit ........................................................................ F8/AS1 3.2.3 b)
arrows ................................................................................. F8/AS1 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
backgrounds ......................................................................... F8/AS1 3.3.3
colours ................................................................................ F8/AS1 2.1, 3.4, 3.5.3 a) b), 4.1.3, Table 3
illumination .......................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5
externally illuminated .............................................................. F8/AS1 3.5.2
internally illuminated .............................................................. F8/AS1 3.5.3
lighting supply ....................................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.5
self-luminous ........................................................................ F8/AS1 3.5.4
lettering ................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.3.1, Table 4
location ................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.1
no exit signs .......................................................................... F8/AS1 3.2.3 a)
wording ................................................................................ F8/AS1 3.2
Signs; escape routes (continued)

- fire safety ................................................................. F8/AS1 4.0, 6.4
- call points ............................................................... F8/AS1 4.1, Figure 4
- colours ................................................................. F8/AS1 4.1.3
- fire and smoke control doors ........................................... F8/AS1 4.2
- lifts ........................................................................... F8/AS1 6.4.1
- stairs for Fire Service personnel ................................... F8/AS1 6.4.3, Figures 12 and 13
- storage heights ....................................................... F8/AS1 6.4.2, Figure 11

- hazard signs................................................................ F8/AS1 6.0
- dangerous goods .................................................... F8/AS1 6.1
- class 1 ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 2 ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 3 ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 5 ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
- class 7 ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4

- colour ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4 a
- radiation warning symbol ........................................ F8/AS1 6.1.4 a, Figure 8
- colour ....................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
- layout ........................................................................ F8/AS1 6.1.3
- lettering .................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
- location ..................................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4

- electrical hazards .................................................... F8/AS1 6.2, Figure 9
- escalators and moving walks ..................................... F8/AS1 6.6, Figure 15
- floor loadings .......................................................... F8/AS1 6.3
- buildings .................................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.1, Figure 10
- lifts ............................................................................. F8/AS1 6.3.2
- passenger lifts ........................................................ F8/AS1 6.3.2 a
- service lifts ............................................................ F8/AS1 6.3.2 b
- hazardous substances and processes .................. NZBC/F3.3 (g)
- identification of hazards ........................................ NZBC/F8.2 (e), F8.3.2
- machine rooms ....................................................... F8/AS1 6.5, Figure 14
- non-potable water .................................................. F8/AS1 6.7, Figure 16
- lighting for emergency ............................................ NZBC/F6.3.2, F8.3.3 (b)
- people with disabilities ........................................ NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4, F8/AS1 6.5
- access symbol ......................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.2, Figure 6
- layout ........................................................................ F8/AS1 5.0.2, Figure 5
- listening systems ..................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
- readability ............................................................... NZBC/F8.3.1
- lettering type and proportions ................................ F8/AS1 1.0, Table 1
- safety ....................................................................... F8/AS1 2.0, 3.2.1
- caution ..................................................................... F8/AS1 2.2.2, 6.1.2, 6.2.2, Figure 2
- colours ..................................................................... F8/AS1 2.1, Table 3
- layout ........................................................................ F8/AS1 2.2
- prohibition and stop signs ....................................... F8/AS1 2.2.1, 6.1.2, Figure 1
- safe condition signs ................................................ F8/AS1 2.2.3
- safety symbols ......................................................... F8/AS1 2.3
- visibility ................................................................. NZBC/F8.3.1, F8.3.3 (b)

Single escape routes
see Escape routes

- Sinks ........................................................................ E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G3/AS1 1.1.5, G13/AS1 Table 2
see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks

Site characteristics .............................................. B1/VM4 Appendix A

Site investigation .................................................. B1/VM4 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
analysis ................................................................. F1/VM1 2.4
assessment ............................................................ F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
detailed investigation ........................................ B1/VM4 A1.3, F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.3
history and records ............................................. F1/VM1 2.1
preliminary investigation ........................................ B1/VM4 A1.2, F1/VM1 1.0.2 b), 2.2
previous industrial use of site ................................ F1/VM1 2.1.1, Table 1
recording information .......................................... B1/VM4 A1.4

Site specific considerations ...................................... B2/VM1 1.2
Siteworks
see Design, siteworks

Slip resistance
D1/VM1 1.0, D1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2

Slopes
D1/AS1 1.2
acceptable slopes
D1/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 2
changes in level
D1/AS1 1.3, 1.3.1
cross falls
D1/AS1 1.2.2

Slope stability
B1/VM4 1.0.4

Small chimneys
see Chimneys

Smoke
NZBC/C3.3.1, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, C3.3.7, C3.3.8

Smoke alarms
F7/AS1 3.1.1, 3.1.2
alarm system
F7/AS1 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4
location
F7/AS1 3.3.1, 3.3.2
maintenance
F7/AS1 3.4.1

Smoke control
C/AS1 3.11.9, 6.19.1, 6.19.12, 6.19.13, Table 6.1
see also Fire safety precautions
car parking
C/AS1 6.10.4 b), 6.10.6
doors
see Doors
in air handling systems
see Fire safety precautions
intermediate floors
C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.3, 6.21.4
limited area atriums
C/AS1 4.5.18, 6.21.4 b), 6.22.1, 6.22.7, 6.22.8, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
long corridors
C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
mechanical smoke extract
see Fire safety precautions
natural smoke venting
see Fire safety precautions
pressurisation
see Fire safety precautions
smoke reservoirs
C/AS1 6.22.2 fl, 6.22.5, 6.22.7 to 6.22.10, A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
systems
C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 6.21.5, 6.23.3 a), A2.1.1 Type 9, Type 10 Type 11 Type 17, B1.1.1, B2.2.1 Step 2, B3.1.1
ventilation
C/AS1 3.14.7, 6.9.6 to 6.9.8, 6.10.6
vertical safe paths
C/AS1 6.9.11, Figure 6.1

Smokecells
C/AS1 3.4.6 b), 4.2.2, 6.1.2 a), 6.4.1, 6.9.1, 6.12.4

Smoke detectors
see Fire safety precautions

Smoke developed index (SDI)
C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C5.1.1 d), Table 6.2

Smoke separations
C/AS1 3.8.3 b), 3.11.1, 3.17.12 b), 6.1.2 c), 6.3.1, 6.6.4 b), 6.6.6 b), 6.9.6 e), 6.9.11, 6.10.1, 6.12.3, 6.12.4, 6.12.9, 6.13.1, 6.19.1, Table 6.1
glazing
C/AS1 5.8.9
smoke seals
C/AS1 6.12.9, 6.19.2 b), 6.19.4

Smoke spread
see Smoke control

Snow
see Structure, loads
Socket outlets  
see **Electricity**, people with disabilities

Soil fixtures .............................................................. G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
see also WC pans

Soil properties .......................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A

Soil shrinkage and expansion ..................................... B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1

Soils  
adverse moisture conditions ........................................ B1/VM4 1.0.2

Solid fuel appliances .................................................. B1/AS3 2.0

Installation ................................................................. C/AS1 9.1

Seismic restraint ......................................................... C/AS1 9.1.2

Solid plastering ......................................................... B2/AS1 3.3

**Solid Waste** .......................................................... G15

Chutes ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.12.1, 6.16.5, 6.16.6

Collection ................................................................... NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1

Holding ....................................................................... NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1

Sewer .......................................................................... NZBC/G15.3.3

Storage ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.12.1, G15/AS1 1.0.1, 3.0, Figure 1

Alternative solution ..................................................... G15/AS1 3.1

Capacity ..................................................................... G15/AS1 1.0.1

Location ....................................................................... G15/AS1 2.0.1

Floors ......................................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.2

Walls .......................................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.3

Water supply ................................................................ G15/AS1 3.0.7

Windows ..................................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6

Space required ............................................................. G15/AS1 1.0.2

Vehicle access .............................................................. G15/AS1 3.0.10

Ventilation .................................................................. G15/AS1 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9

Temperature ................................................................ NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)

Waste disposal units ..................................................... NZBC/G15.3.3

Waste (rubbish) chutes ............................................... NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1 4.0, Figure 2

Cleaning ...................................................................... G15/AS1 4.0.3

Odours ........................................................................ NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)

Restricted access ......................................................... NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)

Spread of fire .............................................................. NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)

Sound insulation tests  
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**

Sound transmission class (STC)  
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**

Spandrels ................................................................. C/AS1 7.1.2 e), 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Specified intended life  
see **Durability**

Spread of Fire  
automatic fire suppression systems ............................. NZBC/C3.3.6

see also Fire safety precautions

Automatic smoke control systems ............................... NZBC/C3.3.8

see also Smoke control

Concealed spaces ...................................................... NZBC/C3.4

Protect adjacent property ........................................... NZBC/C3.1 (c), C3.2 (c)

Resistant to spread of fire ........................................... NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1

Rubbish chutes ............................................................ NZBC/G15.3.2

Safeguard the environment ......................................... NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)

Safety while evacuating .............................................. NZBC/G15.3.2 (a)

see also **Means of Escape**
Spread of flame index (SFI) ............................... C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C5.1.1 b), Table 6.2

Sprinklers
see Fire safety precautions

Stability
see Fire resistance ratings, Structure

Stadiums
see Communal non-residential

Staircase
see Stairways

Stairs
see Stairways

Stairs and ladders........................................ C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.4.1 a), 3.4.7, 3.9.14, 3.15.9, Figures 3.6, 3.10 and 3.21
curved and spiral stairs ......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.5, 3.4.7 a) b)
stairs ........................................ C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.6 b), 3.4.5, 3.11.8, 3.12.3, 3.15.6, 5.8.2 c), 6.9.3, 6.9.10, 7.5.7

Stairways......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1 4.0
see also Access Routes, accessible routes and ladders
accessible stairs .................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1, 6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
curved stairs .................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17
landings .................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
direction changes ........................................ D1/AS1 Figure 16
length.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)
maximum rise ........................................... D1/AS1 4.3.2, Table 7
obstructions ............................................... D1/AS1 4.3.5, Figure 15
width.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.3
lighting .......................................................... D1/AS1 4.6.4.2, Table 8
pitch.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6
pitch lines ..................................... D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2
private stairs ............................................. D1/AS1 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
main.......................................................... D1/AS1 Figure 11, Table 6
minor.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
risers ............................................. D1/AS1 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6
secondary .................................................. D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
service stairs ............................................ D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
slip resistance ............................................. D1/AS1 4.1.4 c), Table 2
spiral stairs .................................................. D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1
treads .......................................................... D1/AS1 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6
tapered treads ............................................. D1/AS1 4.4, Figure 17
visibility .................................................. D1/AS1 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.3
width.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1
winders.......................................................... D1/AS1 4.5, Figure 18

Standard test
see Test methods

Steel
see Design, steel
Storage water heaters .................................................. NZBC/H1.3.4; G12/AS1 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2, 6.9.4 to 6.11, Table 5; H1/AS1 5.0

see also Water heaters

drain pipes ........................................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.3 c)
open vented ........................................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7
free mains pressure supply .................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.1.2, 6.4.2
safe trays .................................................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.3, 6.11.3
seismic restraint .................................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.5, Figure 4
unvented
valve vents .............................................................................................................. G12/AS1 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8

Storage water tanks

see Tanks

Strainers (filters) ...................................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.2.3

Structural fire endurance rating (S)

see Fire resistance ratings

Structural integrity

see Structure, Structural Stability During Fire

Structural Stability During Fire

consequential collapse .......................................................................................... NZBC/C4.3.3
fire hazards .............................................................................................................. NZBC/C4.3.1
fire intensity ............................................................................................................ NZBC/C4.3.1
fire load .................................................................................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1
fire resistance ......................................................................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1, C4.3.2, C4.3.3

Structural stability

see Fire resistance ratings

Structure

building instability ..................................................................................................... B1/VM1 3.0
collapse ...................................................................................................................... B1

damage ..................................................................................................................... B1
deflections ................................................................................................................. B1

demolition ................................................................................................................... B1/VM1 1.3.6

design

concrete .................................................................................................................... B1/VM1 1.1, 2.0

drains

see Drains

foundations

see Foundations

loadings ..................................................................................................................... B1/VM1 1.1, 2.0
earthquake .............................................................................................................. B1/AS1 1.9, Table 2
limit state .................................................................................................................. B1/VM1 1.1, 2.0, 5.2, 7.1
non-limit state .......................................................................................................... B1/VM1 1.1, 7.2

site effects (local) or faults ....................................................................................... B1/VM1 1.1.4

masonry .................................................................................................................... B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3
siteworks .................................................................................................................. B1/VM1 10.0

steel ........................................................................................................................ B1/VM1 5.0

strength reduction factor ....................................................................................... B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4

timber ....................................................................................................................... B1/VM1 10.0

bearings

see also Timber barriers

windows

see Windows

failure ....................................................................................................................... NZBC/B1.1

limit states

serviceability limit state ....................................................................................... NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5

ultimate limit state .................................................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5
Structure (continued)

loads ................................................................. NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.3
creep ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
cyclic loads ...................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
differential movement ....................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
dynamic loads ................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
dynamic pressure ............................................ NZBC/B1.3.3
earth pressure .................................................. NZBC/B1.3.3
earthquake ....................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
seismic resistance of building services ................. B1/VM1 19.0
explosion ......................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
liquid ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
shrinkage ........................................................ NZBC/B1.3.3
snow ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
wind ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3
sitework ........................................................... NZBC/B1.3.6, B1.3.7
stability ......................................................... NZBC/B1.3.6, B2.3.1, D1/AS1 1.6
tanks ............................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
seismic restraint ................................................ G14/VM1 2.3.2
temporary support ............................................. NZBC/B1.3.5
vibrations ........................................................ NZBC/B1.3.3

Stucco ................................................................ B1/AS1 9.3
bottom of stucco .............................................. E2/AS1 9.3.8, Figure 75
decorative attachments ..................................... E2/AS1 9.3.10
finishes ........................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.7
installation ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.4
genral .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.3.4.1
movement control joints ................................... E2/AS1 9.3.4.2
limitations ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.1
non-rigid plaster backings .................................. E2/AS1 9.3.5
installation of building wrap .............................. E2/AS1 9.3.5.1, Table 23
rigid plaster backings ....................................... E2/AS1 9.3.6
fibre cement sheet backing ............................... E2/AS1 9.3.6.2
plywood backing ............................................. E2/AS1 9.3.6.1
parapets and enclosed balustrades ...................... E2/AS1 9.3.9
stucco-topped enclosed balustrades ......... E2/AS1 9.3.9.1, Figure 117
structure ........................................................ AS1 9.3.2
stucco cladding system .................................... E2/AS1 9.3.3, Table 23, Figure 74
windows and doors .......................................... E2/AS1 9.3.11, Figure 76

Subsidence ........................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 (a)

Suites

see Firecells

Surface finishes ................................................. C/AS1 6.1.2(e), 6.20, Tables 6.2 and 6.3
ceilings ........................................................... C/AS1 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a)
exceptions ....................................................... C/AS1 6.20.4
exterior surfaces ............................................. C/AS1 7.1.2, 7.8.6, 7.11
flooring and floor coverings .............................. C/AS1 6.20.8 to 6.20.10, 6.20.14, C2.1
wharenui ........................................................ C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 2.2

Surface Water ..................................................... E1

see also Run-off, drains
2% probability storm ........................................ NZBC/E1.3.1
10% probability storm ..................................... NZBC/E1.3.2

Suspended flexible fabrics ......................... C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.16 to 6.20.19, C3.1, Table 6.2

Swimming pools

see Safety from Falling
T

Tanks
industrial liquid waste ........................................ G14/VM1 1.4.1 c), 1.4.3, 3.0, Figure 3, Table 3
water tanks ....................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.6, 6.2.1
access ................................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.5, Figure 4
covers ................................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.4
location ............................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.1
overflow pipes .................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.2, Figure 4
safe trays ............................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.3, Figure 4
seismic restraint ................................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4: G14/VM1 2.3.2
structural support ................................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
water storage tanks ............................................................................ G12/AS1 5.1

Taverns
see Communal non-residential

Temperature

see Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies

Temperature control
see Interior Environment, interior temperature

Temperature/pressure relief valves ............................................. G12/AS1 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6
installation ............................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.6.5
relief valve drains ................................................................................ G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

Test methods ...................................................................................... C/AS1 Appendix C
fire properties of external wall cladding systems .................................. C/AS1 C9.1
fire resistance ...................................................................................... C/AS1 C7.1
fire resisting closures ......................................................................... C/AS1 C8.1
flame barriers ...................................................................................... C/AS1 C10.1
flammability of floor coverings ......................................................... C/AS1 C2.1
flammability of membrane structures .............................................. C/AS1 C4.1
flammability of suspended flexible fabrics ....................................... C/AS1 C3.1
non-combustibility of materials ...................................................... C/AS1 C6.1
properties of lining materials ........................................................ C/AS1 C5.1

Theatres ............................................................................................. NZBC/G5.3.5
see also Communal non-residential

Thermal break .................................................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
Thermal resistance (R-value) ......................................................... E3/AS1 1.1, H1/VM1 1.4, H1/AS1 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3
alternative solution ........................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.5
materials and installation ................................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.3

Thermostats ......................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.3.1, 6.5.1

Thresholds ........................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.3.2

Timber ................................................................................................. B2/AS1 3.2
see also Design, timber, Timber weatherboards

Timber barriers .................................................................................. B1/AS1 1.2, 9.0, B1/AS2 1.0
see also Barriers and Safety from Falling
alternative details ............................................................................. B1/AS2 2.7
balusters ............................................................................................... B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.3, 2.4.1, 2.7.1, 2.7.2, Figures 2 to 4,
Table 1 to 3 and 5
connections ....................................................................................... B1/AS2 1.0.5 b) c), 2.2.2, 2.3.3 to 2.3.9, 2.5.2,
2.5.3, 2.7.2, Figures 2 to 4, Tables 3 and 4
construction ....................................................................................... B1/AS2 2.0
dimensions of timber ......................................................................... B1/AS2 1.0.4
exposed to the weather ................................................................. B1/AS2 1.0.5
Timber barriers (continued)

joists ................................................................. B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.3.8
blocking ............................................................ B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 2.3.8
boundary joists ................................................. B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.3.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.5, Figure 4
end joists ............................................................ B1/AS2 2.3.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, Figure 4
intermediate joists ............................................. B1/AS2 2.3.2, 2.3.3, Figure 3, Table 3
materials ................................................................ B1/AS2 10.3
moisture content ................................................ B1/AS2 2.6.1
palings .................................................................. B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.5
rails ......................................................................
bottom rails ........................................................ B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.4, 2.5.1, 2.7.2, Table 5
top rails ............................................................. B1/AS2 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3.1, 2.5.1, 2.5.3, 2.7.1, 2.7.2,
                                                   Figure 1, Tables 1 and 2
Timber connections ................................................ B1/AS2 1.0.5 b) c)
Timber weatherboards ......................................... E2/AS1 9.4
finishes ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.9
fixings ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.3.1, Table 24
horizontal weatherboards .................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4
external corners .................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78
fixings ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.4.3, Table 24
horizontal laps .................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.1
internal corners ................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.5, Figure 79
joints ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.2
installation ............................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.3, Table 23
limitations ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.1
horizontal weatherboards .................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, Table 3
vertical weatherboards ........................................ E2/AS1 9.4.4.3, Table 3
weatherboard profiles ........................................ E2/AS1 9.4.1.1
materials ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.2, Table 23
parapets and enclosed balustrades ......................... E2/AS1 9.4.8
vertical weatherboards ........................................ E2/AS1 9.4.5
windows in cavity walls ....................................... E2/AS1 9.4.7, Figures 85 and 86
windows in direct fixed weatherboards .................. E2/AS1 9.4.6, Figures 81-84

Time-share accommodation
see Communal residential

Toilets
see Personal Hygiene, WC Pans

Toxic substances
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 6

Transport terminals
see Commercial buildings

Travel distance .................................................. NZBC/C2.3.1 (d), C2.3.2, C3.3.1 (a)

Tunnels
see Ancillary buildings

Turnstiles
see Doors
U

Ultimate limit states

see Structure, limit states

Universities

see Communal non-residential

Unprotected areas ........................................ C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.6, 5.1.1 b), 7.1.2 d), 7.3, 7.4.1 a),
7.4.2, 7.5.2 to 7.5.6, 7.5.8, 7.6.4, 7.7.1, 7.7.3, 7.7.5,
Step 2 and Step 3, 7.8.9, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.10, 7.9.11,
7.9.13, Figures 7.3 to 7.5, Tables 7.2 to 7.4

fire resisting glazing (Type B) ........................................ C/AS1 5.8.2 a), 7.4.1 a),
7.4.2 to 7.4.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1

small openings (Type A) ........................................ C/AS1 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.4.4, Figure 7.4

uPVC pipe............................................................................................................ G13/AS3 1.0

Urinals ........................................ E3/AS1 3.3, 3.3.6; G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; G13/AS1 Table 2

bowl urinals ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5

continuous wall urinals ........................................ G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3

discharge system ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.2

flushing systems ....................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5

manually operated ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.8

stall urinals ............................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5

surface finishes .............................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.4

trough urinals ............................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Utensil washing .......................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.1
Vacuum relief valves .................................................................................................................. G12/AS1 Table 6

Vehicles.................................................................NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 10.0, G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5; G15/AS1 3.0.10

car parking areas .................................................. D1/AS1 10.1
accessible car parking spaces ........................................... D1/AS1 10.1, 10.2.1
commercial vehicles .................................................. D1/AS1 11.0.2
loading spaces .......................................................... D1/AS1 11.0.2

Vent pipes ......................................................... G12/AS1 6.3.2, 6.8; G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5;

diameter ........................................................................ G12/AS1 6.8.2, G13/AS1 Table 6
fixture vent pipes ...................................... G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
gradient ............................................................................. G13/AS1 5.4
height ....................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.8.2 d)
installation ......................................................... G12/AS1 6.9.1, 6.9.2, G13/AS1 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
insulation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.8.3
relief vent pipes ......................................................... G13/AS1 5.6, Figure 7
termination ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.8.2 c); G13/AS1 5.7.3, Figure 12

Ventilation ............................................................... G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1 6.9.6; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2

airflow control ....................................................... NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0
air handling systems .................................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 b)
air purity ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1 2.0
bacteria, pathogens and allergens ...................................... NZBC/G4.3.2
balconies, bridges and open stairways ..................................... C/AS1 2.14.7
car park .............................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.2
contaminated air

discharge ........................................................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 f)
disposal ............................................................................ NZBC/G4.3.4
removal ............................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.3
cross-ventilation for car parking ........................................ C/AS1 6.10.4, 6.10.6
drains ................................................................. G13/AS1 3.1.1 c); G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
extract ventilation ....................................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 c)
fixed combustion appliances ............................................ NZBC/G4.3.5
fuels .......................................................... G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4
gas burning appliances ............................................... C/AS1 9.2.2
gas-fuel appliances ..................................................... G4/AS1 2.0, 3.0
maximum occupancy .................................................... NZBC/G4.2
mechanical ventilation systems ........................................ NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1 1.3, 2.2

natural................................................................................. G4/AS1 1.2, 2.1
natural smoke ventilation  
see Fire safety precautions

number of air changes ................................................... NZBC/G4.3.1
oil fired appliances ....................................................... C/AS1 9.3.2
outdoor air supply ....................................................... NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1 1.3.1 a) d)
positive and negative pressure ....................................... G4/AS1 1.3.3
prevention of internal moisture ...................................... NZBC/E3.3.1
rate .......................................................... G4/VM1 1.0.1
recirculated air systems ............................................... G4/AS1 1.3.1 e)
safe paths ........................................................................ C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
solid fuel appliances ..................................................... C/AS1 9.1.2

Vermin-proofing ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.3

Vibrations

see Structure
W

Walls........................................NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), C3.3.1, C3.3.5, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1;

C/AS1 5.3.1, 5.7.2, 6.10.6, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.16.2, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.3, 6.20.4 d) f), 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a), 7.8.9.

7.5.9, 7.9.18, Table 6.2;
cavities and concealed spaces ........................................C/AS1 6.18.4, Figures 6.11 and 6.12
curtain walls ........................................................................C/AS1 6.18.4, 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
eexternal walls ........................................................................NZBC/E2.3.2

see also Unprotected areas
floor/wall junctions ..............................................................G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
internal/external wall junctions ...........................................G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 4
surface finishes ........................................................................NZBC/C3.3.1
theatre proscenium walls ........................................C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.3.2 f), 6.19.9, 6.19.10, 6.19.11, Figure 6.13
wall assemblies .......................................................................G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 2

Wall/Roof junctions

see Roof/wall junctions

Wall claddings .................................................................E2/AS1 3.3
air seals..................................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.6, Figure 81
barriers to airflow ..................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.4, Table 23
bottom of cladding ..............................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3, Table 18, Figure 65
balconies, decks and roofs....................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.6
bottom of other wall claddings ............................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.3, Table 18
cement slabs ........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.1, Figure 132
ground level timber framing ..................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.5, Table 18
masonry veneer clearances ..................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, Table 18
openings to garages ..............................................................E2/AS1 9.1.3.4, Table 18, Figure 65
building wrap ........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.7, Table 23, Figure 71
building wrap to wall openings .............................................E2/AS1 9.1.5, Figure 72
drained cavities ....................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8
cavity battens .......................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8.4
limitations .............................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8.1
requirements .........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
vermin-proofing .....................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
wall framing behind cavities ..................................................E2/AS1 9.1.8.5
general ................................................................................E2/AS1 9.1
limitations ............................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.1, Table 3
maintenance ..........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.2
penetrations ...........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.9
inter-storey junctions .........................................................E2/AS1 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
other cavity penetrations .......................................................E2/AS1 9.1.9.2
penetrations through cavities ...............................................E2/AS1 9.1.9.1
pipes and service penetrations .............................................E2/AS1 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
windows and doors .............................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10
head flashings .......................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figure 71
jamb flashings ......................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.6, Table 7
scope ..................................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
treatment of opening ..........................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.2, Figure 72
window heads .......................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
window sills ...........................................................................E2/AS1 9.1.10.5, Table 7

Warehouses

see Industrial buildings

Warning Systems .........................................................F7

see also Alarm systems
combined fire detection and warning system ................................NZBC/F7.3

Wash-down areas ..........................................................G3/AS1 2.3

Washing machines

see Sanitary appliances
Waste chutes
  see Solid Waste

Waste disposal units ................................................. NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1, Figure 2, Table 2

Waste pipes
  see Discharge pipes, Pipes

Water
  see External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water,
  Water Supplies

Water heaters .............................................................. G12/AS1 6.1, Table 5
  installation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.11
  instantaneous water heaters ........................................ G12/AS1 6.11, 6.16, Table 5
  solar water heaters .................................................... G12/AS1 6.11
  storage water heaters
    see Storage water heaters
  wet back water heaters ............................................... G12/AS1 6.13, Figure 15

Water mains .................................................................. G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1

Water seals .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; G13/AS1 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1,
  G13/AS2 3.3.1 d)

Water splash .................................................................... E3/AS1 3.0
  basins ........................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
  baths ............................................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
  lining materials .............................................................. E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
  joints in linings ............................................................. E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2
  showers .......................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
  sinks .............................................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
  tubs ................................................................................ E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
  urinals .......................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.6

Water Supplies ................................................................ G12
  access for maintenance ................................................ NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)
  backflow prevention devices ......................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
  cold .............................................................................. G3/AS1 1.1.4
  drinking water .............................................................. NZBC/G12.2
  energy efficiency ......................................................... NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4; H1/AS1 5.0
  hot ................................................................................ G3/AS1 1.1.4, Figure 1; G12/AS1 6.0
  mixing devices .............................................................. G12/AS1 6.14.2, Figure 16
  pipe sizes ...................................................................... G12/AS1 6.12, Table 4
  safe water temperatures ............................................... G12/AS1 6.14
  isolation of system ....................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
  leakage ......................................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)
  laundries ...................................................................... G2/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2
  mains ............................................................................. G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
  non-potable water ......................................................... NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1 4.1
  outlet identification ..................................................... G12/AS1 4.2.1, Figure 3
  people with disabilities ................................................. NZBC/G12.3.9
  potable water ................................................................ NZBC/G12.3.1, G12.3.6 (a), G14.3.2 (c);
    .............................................................................. G12/AS1 3.0, G14/VM1 1.6.2
  pressure vessels ............................................................ NZBC/G12.1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)
  sanitary appliances ...................................................... NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
  sanitary fixtures ......................................................... NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
  solid waste areas .......................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.7, 4.0.3
  water storage vessels .................................................... NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8
  see also Storage water heaters
  water temperature ..................................................... NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8
Water supply systems .......................................................... G12/VM1 1.0, G12/AS1 5.0
installation ........................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2
anchor points ....................................................................... G12/AS1 7.1.2
electrochemical compatibility .............................................. G12/AS1 7.1.1
in concrete or masonry .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.3.3
pipe supports ....................................................................... G12/AS1 7.1
spacing ................................................................................ G12/AS1 7.1.3, Table 7
pipes below ground .............................................................. G12/AS1 7.3.2
protection from damage ...................................................... G12/AS1 7.3
protection from freezing ...................................................... G12/AS1 7.2
protection from frosts ........................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.3
maintenance facilities ............................................................ G12/AS1 5.2
materials .............................................................................. G12/AS1 2.0, Table 1
pressure limitations .............................................................. G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
temperature limitations ....................................................... G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
pipe size ................................................................................ G12/AS1 5.3, Table 4
flow rates .............................................................................. G12/AS1 5.1.1, Table 3
watertightness ...................................................................... G12/AS1 7.5

Water tanks
see Tanks

Water traps ................................................................. G13/AS1 3.0, Figure 1
dimensions .......................................................................... G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figure 1
location ................................................................................ G13/AS1 3.3
multiple outlets ................................................................. G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2

WC pans ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1;
                                                             G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,
cisterns ............................................................................... G1/AS1 2.2.2
undertraps ......................................................................... G1/AS1 2.2.2
flushing systems ............................................................. G1/AS1 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6
surface finish ...................................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 a)
water seals ............................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2

Weather stops ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.3.2

Weatherboards
see Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards

Watertightness ............................................................. E2/VM1 1.0, E2/AS1 2.1, 8.1.1

Watertightness risk factors ...................................................... E2/AS1 3.0
establishing the risk .......................................................... E2/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
building envelope risk matrix .......................................... Table 2
elements ............................................................................. E2/AS1 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4
definitions of risk .............................................................. E2/AS1 3.1.1, Table 1
risk score ............................................................................... E2/AS1 3.1.2, Table 2
roof claddings ................................................................. E2/AS1 3.2
wall claddings ................................................................. E2/AS1 3.3, Table 3

Whare Runanga
see Communal non-residential, assembly service

Wharenui ................................................................. H1/VM1 1.1.1

Wheelchairs ................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.1
see also People with disabilities, Accessible routes
spaces for wheelchairs ...................................................... D1/AS1 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30
wheelchair access ............................................................ NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)

Wind
see Structure, loads

Wind barriers ................................................................. E2/AS1 2.5
Windows and doors .............................................. B1/VM1 12.0; C/AS1 3.1.4, 6.20.4 c); E2/AS1 9.1.10, 9.2.6, 9.3.11, 9.5.4, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.7, 9.8.8, 9.9.9, Figure 76; E3/AS1 1.3.1; F4/AS1 1.2.3, 4.0; G7/AS1 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1, Figures 1 and 2; G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6

see also Natural Light
closed cell foam tape ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.7
fire windows
see Glazing

glazing ........................................................................... B1/AS1 7.0
head flashings ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figure 71
jamb flashings .................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.6, Table 7
scope ................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
treatment of opening ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.2, Figure 72
used for escape ............................................................. C/AS1 3.3.6 d), 3.18, 6.20.6 b), Figure 3.32
vertical profiled metal .................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
window heads ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
windows – cavity ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.7.7.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9, Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128
windows – direct fixed .................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.6, 9.5.4.1, 9.7.7.1, 9.8.8.1, 9.9.9, Figures 81-84, 90, 115 and 127
window sills ...................................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.5, Table 7

Work camps ................................................................ NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d); G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1

see also Communal residential, community service